This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

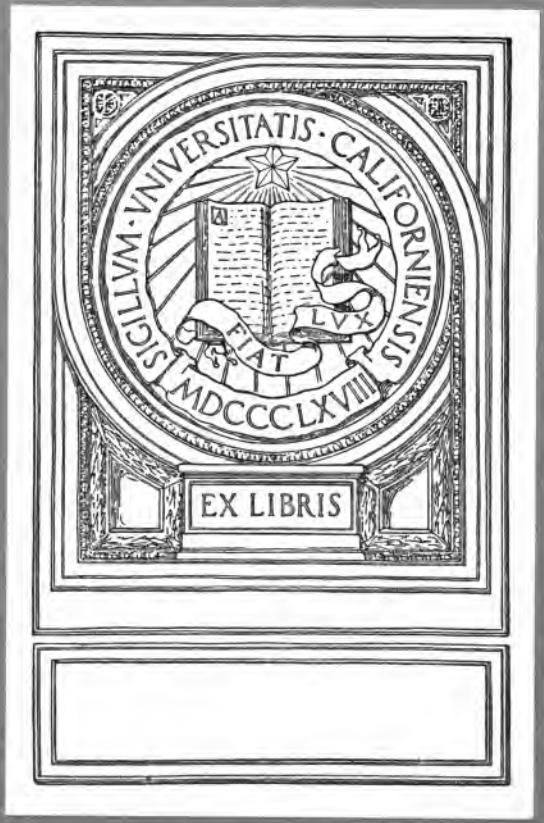
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

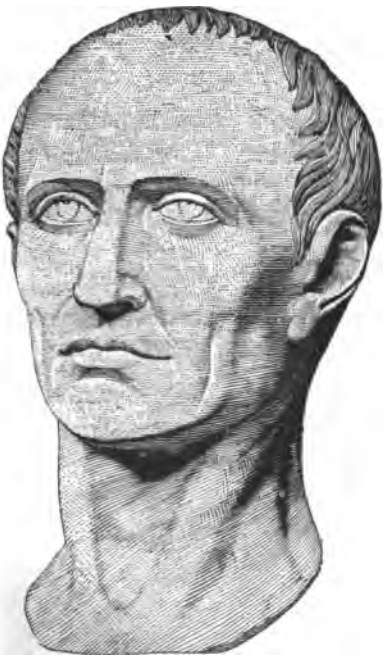
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`


SIGILLVM · VNIVERSITATIS · CALIFORNIENSIS
FIAT LVX
MDCCCLXVIII
EX LIBRIS



CAIUS IULIUS CAESAR.
(British Museum.)

(*Frontispiece.*)

THE WORD-VALUE

FIRST LATIN BOOK

BY

E. CUTLER SHEDD, A.M.

REVISED EDITION

NEW YORK
WILLIAM BEVERLEY HARISON
1907

SOME SUGGESTIONS.

IN examining this book please keep in mind the following facts:

The repetition of words is so constant that the great majority of the words in any given lesson are familiar to the pupils when they reach it.

They therefore are quite free to center attention upon the endings and syntax.

About three fourths of each advance reading lesson is really a review of words, forms, and constructions already studied.

Hence it is possible to master the reading lessons in spite of their increasing length and sometimes complex sentence structure.

A ONE YEAR'S COURSE.

The pupils should be of the usual age of High-School Freshmen. A nine months' course, with five recitations a week, contains about 170 recitations, aside from periods for examinations.

As a rule, devote two recitations to each of the seventy-eight lessons, abridging the prose composition work where necessary. Half, or less, of the prose work has given excellent results when carefully done. (156 recitations.)

The first recitation may be devoted to the forms or rules and to the reading; the second to completing the reading, and to prose composition work, with ten minutes, if desired, for composition at sight.

Devote about ten more recitations to the further study of the paradigms.

Devote the remaining recitations to Lessons LXVII and LXXIV.

If more time be needed, omit Lessons XLII, XLVII, and LX (releasing six recitations), and Lesson LXXIV (releasing four or five more recitations). Or else devote a few weeks at the beginning of the second year to the last few lessons and the final reading exercises. This will put the class into excellent trim for immediately taking up Cæsar or Nepos.

"COMPOSITION AT SIGHT."—This is the title of a pamphlet discussing the subject and giving a list of sentences adapted for use. It will be sent free of charge on request to teachers using this book.

"SIX BOOKS OF CÆSAR IN ONE YEAR."—In a pamphlet of this title the author has described the method which is embodied in this book, and also the result of a two years' test. In this test the class numbered fifteen. Each member completed the six books with comparative ease and without lack of thoroughness. Those pupils to whom Latin proved difficult seemed to derive the greater benefit—indeed, judging by previous experience, several would have failed to pass in even the five books required of previous classes had it not been for the thorough drill in reading given by the WORD-VALUE TEXT-BOOK.

Copyright, 1907, by E. CUTLER SHEDD.

PREFACE.

If we ask second-year pupils what they find to be the great obstacle to the easy reading of Latin, their usual reply is: "We do not know the meanings of the words." This reply indirectly attests the success of recent text-book makers in their efforts to improve the method of presenting syntax; but it is also a call to confront the problem how best to aid learners to acquire a vocabulary.

The Latin words which the pupil will meet most often plainly are of greatest value to him. For example, *dico* and *res* are very important. He will not meet with *regno* or *nauta* ten times a year if he reads the writers usually selected, unless he takes the first book of Livy. He will encounter *cachinno* or *anser* once or twice, if at all. This book uses only important Latin words, so far as feasible.

The best way to memorize the meanings of a large number of words is to encounter them frequently in reading lessons and written work, for most words are arbitrary symbols, with nothing to suggest a connection with the objects they denote. If repetitions are frequent enough, the process of memorizing proceeds without apparent effort. Almost any pupil, when he completes his first year in Latin, recalls the meanings of such words as *bonus* and *est*. They have been brought to his attention again and again during months of study.

This book contains four long word-lists, printed on tinted paper for ready reference. The words in these lists are repeated about five times in the reading lessons in which they first occur, where they are printed in heavy type and also collected in a short word-list. The long lists take the place of an English-Latin vocabulary, for the Latin words required in any given composition exercise will be found in the preceding word-lists, in the Latin reading exercise for the same lesson, or by the help of a foot-note.

361233

The reading contains in all about eleven thousand words, and the written exercises about six thousand. Thus the words found in the special lists each occur from sixty to seventy times in the book. Naturally some occur more frequently than others, but scarcely more than six less than thirty or forty times. There are also lists of English words derived from the Latin, "Allied Words," which aid the memory when aid is most needed. The Latin words are thus so impressed upon the memory by repetition and the association of ideas that the pupil can scarcely choose but learn them. It is believed that this method has never before been applied so thoroughly and systematically.[1]

The saving of time thus secured permits the introduction of reading lessons of some length, and of sentences with a complex word order. The value of the latter as a preparation for classical Latin is obvious.

The isolated sentences are taken as far as possible from the text of Cæsar. Wherever practicable they give way to narratives from his writings, with text simplified, taken chiefly from the "Civil Wars," in order to impart variety and correct any tendency to depend upon memory alone in second-year reading. Those passages have been chosen

[1] To what extent this method affects the reading of second-year Latin may be seen from the following extract from Cæsar (B. G. II. 17), where the words in heavy type are among the words memorized in this First Latin Book:

His rēbus cōgnitīs, explōrātōrēs **centuriōnēsque praemittit, quī locum idōneum castrīs** dēligant. **Cum ex** dēditīciīs Belgīs **reliquīsque** Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem **secūtī ūnā iter facerent**, quīdam **ex hīs**, ut posteā **ex captīvīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum** cōnsuētūdine **itineris nostrī exercitūs** perspectā, **nocte ad** Nerviōs **pervēnērunt atque hīs** dēmōnstrārunt, inter singulās **legiōnēs impedīmentōrum māgnum numerum** intercēdere, **neque esse** quicquam negōtiī, **cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnum** spatium **ab-essent, hanc** sub sarcinīs adorīrī; **quā** pulsā **impedīmentīsque** dīreptīs **futūrum, ut reliquae contrā** cōnsistere **nōn** audērent.

which seemed most full of interest as narratives. The text has been simplified only to the extent that the pupils' knowledge of vocabulary and construction demand in each reading lesson. The learner is thus gradually introduced to the Latin of Cæsar himself. Incidentally he is familiarized with Roman methods of warfare and history, in which he is aided by brief notes and carefully selected illustrations and maps.

In the treatment of rules and paradigms the following are the points chiefly considered:

(1) Terms and expressions unfamiliar to the pupil have been either eliminated or carefully explained when first introduced. Wherever possible English grammar has been used as a stepping-stone. The attempt has been made to approach difficult subjects, such as the subjunctive, from the standpoint of the learner.

(2) Rules and forms not needed for the reading of "The Gallic War" have either been excluded, or else but little emphasized. Hence the locative case, for instance, has been omitted, and the vocative made optional.

(3) All rules introduced are given in full. For example, all forms of indirect discourse are fully treated.

(4) Common constructions which are difficult are emphasized, and a constant drill in them is maintained throughout the reading and written exercises. Particular attention is called, in this connection, to the treatment of the sequence of tenses and of clauses of purpose and result in the subjunctive, and of indirect discourse.

(5) Constructions, like those of the gerundive, which pupils are likely to confuse, are introduced at widely separated intervals.

(6) The constructions which are most common are introduced first; for example, the ablative of means and *qui* before *quis*.

(7) Similar forms are introduced in close sequence. All forms of the genitive in *ius* are thus united.

(8) The work has been graded with much care. The introductory lessons are an example of this. In the latter part of the book frequent reading lessons are inserted to aid the pupil in assimilating what has been already learned, before taking up new points.

(9) The subject of verb analysis is given considerable attention in the belief that it greatly simplifies the mastering of the verb.

(10) The grouping of the words in the Latin Reading Lessons (believed to be a new feature in language teaching) has been suggested as a valuable aid in acquiring the habit of rapid reading.

Many cross references are given, to aid in uniting what logically belong together. The rules are reprinted at the rear of the book in a list, arranged systematically and with references to leading grammars, inserted for convenience and to facilitate the transition to second-year work.

For the sake of uniformity and simplicity great care has been taken that each style of type be used for a like purpose throughout the book. Latin words and phrases, for instance, appear in a uniform type and are thus immediately distinguishable from the English.

We are indebted to Mrs. M. J. Woodhull, of New York City, for the careful editing of the book, and also for her many valuable suggestions.

Thanks are also due to Mr. George M. Baker, recently instructor in the Lawrenceville Preparatory School, for the care he has exercised in marking the quantities, and to Professor Clifford P. Clark, of Fairmont College, for various useful suggestions. The author's greatest obligation, however, is to his pupils, (without whose cooperation little could have been accomplished,) especially to those of them to whom the study of Latin has frequently seemed dull and unprofitable.

E. CUTLER SHEDD.

RYE, N. Y., December 15, 1905.

CONTENTS.

CAIUS IULIUS CAESAR.....*Frontispiece*

PAGE

Map I. THE ROMAN DOMINIONS, 44 B.C..... 85
Map II. SOUTHEASTERN GAUL..... 86
Map III. THE SCENE OF CAESAR'S CAMPAIGN AGAINST POMPEY. 87
Map IV. THE ROMAN PROVINCE OF AFRICA..... 204
Map V. THE REGION AROUND UTICA, 44 B.C..... 205
GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION..... 1

LESSON

I. Singular and Plural Nominative of First Declension..... 7
II. Accusative Case. Direct Object..... 9
III. First Declension. Indirect Object..... 11
IV. Order of Words. Apposition. Predicate Nouns..... 14
In with Ablative.
V. Dative of the Possessor..... 18
VI. In with Accusative. Omission of Subject..... 20
First Word-list.
VII. Second Declension. Vocative Case..... 23
VIII. Adjectives of First and Second Declensions. Predicate Adjectives..... 26
IX. Second Declension. Nouns in **-er**..... 29
X. The Verb **Sum**. Agreement of Verb with Subject..... 32
XI. **Sum**, *continued*. Ablative of Means or Instrument..... 34
XII. First Conjugation. Personal Endings..... 37
XIII. First Conjugation, *continued*. Verb Stems..... 41
XIV. Ablative of Manner. Endings..... 44
XV. **Hic** and **Ille**..... 46

LESSON		PAGE
XVI.	**Is**	49
XVII.	**Qui.** Agreement of Relative Pronouns	52
XVIII.	**Quis?**	55
XIX.	Reading	58
XX.	**Iste, Idem, Ipse**	60
XXI.	**Quidam. Aliquis.** Irregular Adjectives	63
	Word-list for Review	66
XXII.	Third Declension. Mute Stems. "Allied Words" begin	67
XXIII.	Third Declension. Mute Stems, *continued.* Ablative of Cause	70
XXIV.	Third Declension. Liquid Stems	73
XXV.	Third Declension. Stems in **i**. Descriptive, Ablative, or Genitive	76
XXVI.	Third Declension. Stems in **i**, *continued.* Complementary Infinitive	79
XXVII.	Third Declension. Adjectives. Principal and Subordinate Clauses. Order of Words	82
XXVIII.	Third Declension. Adjectives, *continued.* Hints for Reading	88
XXIX.	Ablative of Time	93
XXX.	Second Conjugation	95
XXXI.	Second Conjugation, *continued.* Tense Signs	98
XXXII.	Ablative of Specification	101
XXXIII.	Fourth Declension	103
	Word-list for Review	105
XXXIV.	Third Conjugation	106
XXXV.	Third Conjugation, *continued*	108
XXXVI.	Reading	111
XXXVII.	Comparing of Adjectives, Ablative with Comparatives	113
XXXVIII.	Comparing of Adjectives, *continued*	116
XXXIX.	Comparing of Adjectives, *continued*	119
XL.	Formation of Adverbs	122
XLI.	Comparing of Adverbs	125
XLII.	Reading	127
XLIII.	Third Conjugation Verbs in **iō**. Accusative of Space and Time	129
XLIV.	Fifth Declension	132
XLV.	Subjunctive of Purpose	134

LESSON		PAGE
XLVI.	Personal and Reflexive Pronouns. Possessive Adjectives	138
	Word-list for Review	141
XLVII.	Reading	143
XLVIII.	Numerals	145
XLIX.	Numerals, *continued*	148
L.	Subjunctive of Result	149
LI.	The Verb **Possum**	151
LII.	Reading	154
LIII.	Fourth Conjugation	156
LIV.	Review of the Four Conjugations	158
LV.	The Infinitive. Indirect Statements	159
LVI.	The Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Statements	163
LVII.	Reading	165
LVIII.	Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing	166
LIX.	Participles. Accusative of Place Whither, Names of Towns	169
LX.	Reading	173
LXI.	Deponent Verbs. Ablative with some Deponents	174
LXII.	Dative with some Intransitives	176
LXIII.	The Irregular Verbs **Volō, Nōlō, Mālō**	178
LXIV.	**Cum.** Temporal	179
LXV.	Reading for Review	181
LXVI.	Gerundive and Gerund	183
LXVII.	Reading	185
LXVIII.	Dative of End or Service. Dative with Compounds	188
LXIX.	Ablative Absolute	190
LXX.	Primary and Secondary Tenses. Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive. Full Rule for Sequence of Tenses.	193
LXXI.	The Irregular Verb **Eō.** Ablative of Separation	196
LXXII.	Subjunctive and Relative Clauses	198
LXXIII.	The Irregular Verbs **Ferō** and **Fīō.** Hints for Reading	201
	Word-list for Review	202
LXXIV.	Reading	206
LXXV.	Indirect Questions. **Quam** with Superlative	210
LXXVI.	Conditional Sentences	212
LXXVII.	Commands and Appeals. The Three Forms of Indirect Discourse	215

LESSON		PAGE
LXXVIII.	The Periphrastic Conjugations	218
	Reading Lessons	221
	Tables of Declension and Conjugation	228
	General Vocabulary	259
	Vocabulary of Proper Names	279
	List of Rules, Arranged Systematically	285
	Index	291

Univ. of
California

References throughout are to paragraphs.

There is no English-Latin vocabulary. The majority of the words used in the prose composition work present no difficulty, because the pupil is already familiar with them. Every word, except proper names, may be found either in previous word-lists, in the Latin reading exercise for the same lesson, or by the help of a foot-note. Compare 48 and 72.

The vocabulary of proper names follows the main vocabulary.

Directions for the use of the "Allied Words" are given in paragraph 131.

For the purpose of ready reference, the rules will be found arranged systematically and with references to leading Latin grammars in a list following the vocabulary at the end of the book.

For the list of abbreviations see page 258.

References throughout are to paragraphs.

GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. ALPHABET. The **Latin alphabet** is the same as the English, except that it has neither **j** nor **w**. **I** serves both as a **vowel** and as a **consonant.**

a. In late Latin and English **j** has taken the place of **i**-consonant.

2. 1. The sounds denoted by the letters called **vowels** are produced by vibrating the vocal cords. The sounds denoted by the **mute consonants** are most easily produced when a vowel sound is checked by means of the throat, tongue, or lips. A **semi-vowel** partakes of the character of both a consonant and a vowel, but usually appears in combination with the latter.

2. The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u,** and **y.**

3. CLASSIFICATION OF CONSONANTS.

1. **Mutes. b, p, c, g, k, q, d, t.**

b, p, lip sounds, called **labial mutes.**

c (**ch**, cp. 5[1]), **g, k, q** (**qu**, cp. 4, 2, *a*), throat sounds, called **guttural mutes.**

d, t, teeth (or tongue) sounds, called **dental** (or lingual) **mutes.**

2. **Liquids. l, m, n, r.**

More strictly, **l** and **r** are **liquids, m** and **n nasals.**

3. **f, h,** and **s** are **spirants.**

h is sometimes called a **breathing. s** is the **sibilant.**

4. **i**-consonant and **v** are **semi-vowels.**

l, r, s, and **h** are sometimes classed here.

5. **x** and **z** are **double consonants.**

4. 1. **Two methods** of pronouncing Latin are used in America, the **Roman** and the **English.** In the **English**

[1] References throughout are to paragraphs.

the sounds as a rule are the same as in English. This is now seldom used.

SOUNDS OF LETTERS. ROMAN METHOD.

2. VOWELS.

The **vowels** are the same as in **English.** Broadly speaking, each vowel has only one sound. If the sound of a vowel in a syllable is somewhat prolonged when pronounced, the vowel is said to be **long.** If the sound is shortened, the vowel is said to be **short.**

LONG.	SHORT.
ā as in *ah.*	**a** as in *sofa.*
ē as in *they.*[1]	**e** nearly as in *set.*
ī as in *machine.*	**i** nearly as in *tin.*
ō as in *home.*	**o** as in *melody.*
ū as *oo* in *tool.*	**u** as in *put.*

y is sounded like the German ü, or French u.

a. When **qu** or **gu** precede a vowel, **u** is treated as a consonant. This is also true of **u** in the forms **huic** (93) and **cuī** (106, 113).

Some authorities, however, consider the **ui** in these forms a diphthong.

3. DIPHTHONGS.

A **diphthong** is produced by running together the sounds of two vowels.

The more common diphthongs are pronounced as follows:

ae as *ai* in *aisle.* **eu** as *eu* in *feud.*
au as *ou* in *out.* **oe** as *oi* in *soil.*
ui, when a diphthong, as *oo-ee,* pronounced rapidly.

5. CONSONANTS.

Many of these are pronounced as in English. The following require notice:

[1] More strictly, like the French *é* in *fête.*

References throughout are to paragraphs.

bs is pronounced as *ps*, **bt** as *pt*.

c is hard, as in *cat*.

g is hard, as in *go*.

ch, ph. It is best to uniformly pronounce **ch** hard, as in *Christian*, and **ph** like *f*, as in *Philip*.

From the standpoint of Latin pronunciation, these letters should be sounded separately, as in the English compound *up-hill*. But these combinations usually occur in words borrowed from the Greek, where **ch** stands for a Greek sound similar to its sound in the German word *ich*, and **ph** stands for **f**.

i-consonant is pronounced like *y* in *yet*.

Final m is hardly pronounced.

nc is pronounced as in *uncle*, **ng** as in *angle*, **ngu** as in *sanguine*.

s is always pronounced as in *sin*, and **t** as in *time*.

v is pronounced as *w* in *will*.

The **double consonant x** stands for **ks**.

Doubled consonants (**pp, tt,** etc.) are **both** pronounced, as *tt* in *cat-tail*.

6. SYLLABLES.

1. A word has as many **syllables** as it has **vowels** and **diphthongs**: **cen-tu-rī-ō-ne.**

2. In dividing a word into syllables, a single consonant is joined to the following vowel: **ho-mi-nēs.**

a. But when the word is formed by the union of two or more words (that is, is a compound) the division shows the component parts: **ab-esse.**

3. The **last syllable** of a word is called the **ultima** (in Latin meaning *last*); the syllable preceding the ultima, the **penult** (a word contracted from the Latin **paene,** *almost*, and **ultima**). That preceding the penult is called the **ante-penult.** (**ante** in Latin means *before*.)

7. QUANTITY, OR LENGTH OF VOWELS.

1. **Vowels** are **long** (—) or **short** (⏑). In this book **long** vowels only are marked.

2. A vowel is short before another vowel or **h**, and generally before **nt** and **nd**.

3. **Diphthongs** are **long**.

4. In compounds vowels representing diphthongs, and vowels resulting from contraction, are **long**:

inīquus (for **in-aequus**); **cōgo** (contracted from **co-agō**).

5. A **vowel** is **long** before **nf**, **ns** and **i**-consonant, and generally long before **gn**.

6. A **syllable**[1] is **long** if it contains a **long vowel** or a **diphthong**, or if it has a **short vowel** followed by **two consonants** (except a mute with **l** or **r**), or a double consonant.

8. ACCENT.

1. An **accented syllable** is one which is pronounced with greater **stress** of voice than other syllables in the same word.

Latin accent carries with it less stress of voice than English accent.

2. In words of **two syllables**, the accent is upon the **first syllable**: **sil'-va.**

3. In words of more than two syllables, the accent is upon the **penult**, if that is **long**, otherwise upon the antepenult: **a-mī'-cus.**

4. If **-ne** [41] or **-que** [91] be added to a word, the accent falls upon the **last syllable** of the word: **laudat'-ne? mensa'-que.**

9. CASES. The names of the cases are **Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Ablative, Vocative.**

a. There is also a **Locative** case, which is not given in this book, as it rarely occurs in second-year Latin.

b. The meanings and uses of the cases will be given in succeeding lessons.

[1] To avoid confusion, the quantity of syllables is not indicated in this book.

10. GENDER.

1. There are three genders, **masculine, feminine** and **neuter,** as in English.

2. Unlike the English, the **gender** is usually determined by the **ending.**

Thus, **nouns** whose nominative singular ends in **a** are nearly always **feminine.**

a. Sometimes gender is determined by the **meaning,** as in English.

b. That a word in English is neuter, and hence referred to as "it", does not show that it is neuter in Latin. In Latin "field", "year", and "sword", for instance, are each referred to as "he"; "forest", "road", and "gate", as "she".

3. Names of **males, rivers, winds** and **months** are **masculine.**

4. Names of **females, countries, towns, islands** and **trees** are **feminine.**

5. **Indeclinable nouns** are **neuter.**

11. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE IN PRONUNCIATION.

1. VOWELS.

ācriter, *eagerly.*
āla, *wing.*
āra, *altar.*
Cornēlia.
culpa, *fault.*
fortūna, *chance.*
ēdictum, *proclamation.*
ēmittō, *I send out.*
Ēpīrus.
alter, *the other (of two).*
inter, *between.*
tamen, *yet.*
Īdūs.
īra, *anger.*
avis, *bird.*
Asia.
dulcis, *sweet.*
ōlim, *formerly, once.*
ōrātiō, *a speech.*
ōrdō, *rank, order.*
modo, *only.*
Hector.
mercātor, *merchant.*
ūndecim, *eleven.*
ūtilis, *useful.*
ūva, *grape.*

2. DIPHTHONGS.

Graecia.
aedificium, *edifice.*
tubæ, *trumpets.*
causa, *cause.*
gaudium, *delight.*
nauta, *sailor.*
Eurōpa.
Eurus.
Euphrātes.
coepī, *I began.*
Poenicus.
poena, *punishment.*

3. CONSONANTS.

Cicerō,
Caesar,
cīvis, *citizen.*
Charōn.
schola, *school.*
cachinnō, *I laugh aloud.*
genus, *race.*
grānum, *a grain.*
gustō, *I taste.*
iam, *already.*
iānua, *door.*
Iūra.
Polyphēmus,
elephantus, *elephant.*
Philippus.
sēdēs, *seat.*
rosa, *rose.*
Mūsa.
virgō, *virgin.*
via, *road.*
verbum, *word.*
lingua, *tongue.*
sanguis, *blood.*
anguis, *snake.*
quercus, *oak.*
quondam, *formerly.*
quī, *who*
Suētōnius.
suāvis, *pleasant.*
suī, *of himself.*

4. SYLLABLES.

mā-tri-mo-ni-um, *marriage.*
lē-gā-ti-ō, *embassy.*
Hel-vē-ti-ī.
A-quī-tā-ni-a.
Ca-ta-man-to-loe-dēs.
auc-tō-ri-tās, *authority.*
pulchritūdō, *beauty.*
perspiciō, *I see through.*
invictus, *unconquered.*
exspīrō, *I breathe forth.*
dēpōnō, *I put down.*
cōnferō, *I collect.*
circumveniō, *I surround.*

LESSON I.

12. SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

puella, *girl.*	**puellae,** *girls.*
rēgīna, *queen.*	**rēgīnae,** *queens.*

a. How does the **plural** of the Latin noun differ from the **singular?** Form the plural of the following nouns:

fīlia, *daughter.*	**terra,** *land.*
mēnsa, *table.*	**via,** *road.*
silva, *forest.*	

13. EXAMPLES.

Singular and Plural Nominative of First Declension.

Via est longa, *The road is long.*
Viae sunt longae, *Roads are long.*

a. Notice that the **adjective** has a **plural** ending when it modifies a **noun** in the **plural.** If English were like Latin in this respect we would say "Roads are longs."

b. There is no article. **Via** may be translated either *a road* or *the road*; **viae,** *roads* or *the roads.*

14. (See the vocabulary on page 22.)

1. **Terra est lāta.**
2. **Cōpiae sunt māgnae.**
3. **Ubi est mēnsa alta et longa?**
4. **Multae viae sunt longae.**
5. **Terrae sunt multae**
6. **Mēnsa est lāta.**
7. **Ubi est māgna mēnsa?**
8. **Estne**[1] **fīlia bona?**

[1] **-ne** is the sign of a question, and cannot be translated. It is affixed to the verb, as **estne, suntne,** or to **nōn (nōnne).**

9. **Mēnsae sunt altae.**
10. **Multae mēnsae sunt māgnae et altae.**
11. **Ubi sunt māgnae silvae?**
12. **Rēgīna est bona.**
13. **Puella et rēgīna [1] sunt bonae.**
14. **Viae sunt lātae.**
15. **Ubi est puella bona?**

15. This exercise is to be translated into Latin. The words needed in the English-Latin exercises of the first six lessons will be found in the Latin-English exercises which immediately precede them.

1. The road is long.
2. Is the road long? (14,[2] note 1.)
3. Are the roads long?
4. Are the tables long?
5. Where are the wide tables?
6. Where are the good girls?
7. Many forests are large.
8. The table is large and high.

[1] Notice the compound subject.
[2] References are to paragraphs.

LESSON II.

THE DIRECT OBJECT.

16. EXAMPLES.

Puella tubam portat, *The girl is carrying* (or, *carries*, or, *does carry*) *a trumpet.*

Puella tubās portat, *The girl is carrying trumpets.*

Puellae tubās portant, *Girls are carrying* (or, *carry*, or, *do carry*) *trumpets.*

Rēgīna multās puellās amat, *The queen loves* (or, *is loving*, or, *does love*) *many girls.*

a. In these sentences notice the **endings** **-am** and **-ās.** How do they differ in meaning?

Accusative Case. Direct Object.

These are the **endings** of the **Accusative case.** Notice that in these sentences it denotes what is called in English grammar the **direct object** of the verb. To what case in English grammar does this use of the Accusative correspond?

b. How does the plural differ from the singular in the verbs given above? In the same way form the plurals of

amat, *loves.* **laudat,** *praises.*

c. Notice that the adjective **multās** agrees with **puellās,** the noun which it modifies, just as the adjectives in Lesson I agree with the nouns which they modify.

17. (See the vocabulary on page 22.)

1. **Puella aquam portat.**
2. **Terra silvās multās habet.**
3. **Rēgīna puellam laudat.**
4. **Ubi est praeda māgna?**

5. **Viae sunt multae et longae.**
6. **Rēgīna rosam habet.**
7. **Fīliae rosās habent.**
8. **Puellae aquam portant.**
9. **Ubi sunt cōpiae māgnae?**
10. **Fīlia tubam habet.**
11. **Puella rēgīnam amat.**
12. **Rēgīna puellās bonās amat.**
13. **Terra māgna viās longās et lātās habet.**
14. **Fīliae bonae rēgīnam laudant.**
15. **Puellae multae fīliam bonam laudant.**
16. **Amatne rēgīna bona fīliās bonās?**
17. **Puellae mēnsam altam habent.**
18. **Portantne puellae mēnsam lātam?**
19. **Rēgīna bona fīliam bonam laudat.**

18. (See 15.)[1] Place the verb last in your Latin translation, except in the fourth and ninth sentences.

1. Is the girl carrying a table?
2. The troops have much plunder.
3. The large country has large forests.
4. Where[2] are the troops?
5. The queen praises the girls.
6. The girls love the queen.
7. The queen has a large country.
8. The girl is carrying the roses and the trumpet.
9. Does the queen praise the girl?

[1] References are to paragraphs.

[2] **-ne** (14, note 1) is not used with **ubi**. Cp. 17, 9.

LESSON III.

19. FIRST DECLENSION.

Declension is the changing of a Latin **noun** or **adjective** into the forms for the **different cases** (9), as **puella,** for instance, has already been changed into the three case-forms **puellam, puellae,** and **puellās.** (16.)

Nouns of the First Declension are **feminine** in gender (10). But see 10,3.

FIRST DECLENSION.

silva, *forest.*

	SINGULAR.	
NOMINATIVE	silv**a**	(*a*) *forest* (13, *b*)
GENITIVE	silv**ae**	*of* (*a*) *forest*
DATIVE	silv**ae**	*to* or *for* (*a*) *forest*
ACCUSATIVE	silv**am**	(*a*) *forest*
ABLATIVE	silv**ā**	
VOCATIVE	(silv**a**)	
	PLURAL.	
NOMINATIVE	silv**ae**	*forests*
GENITIVE	silv**ārum**	*of forests*
DATIVE	silv**īs**	*to* or *for forests*
ACCUSATIVE	silv**ās**	*forests*
ABLATIVE	silv**īs**	
VOCATIVE	(silv**ae**)	

a. What is the difference between the **nominative** and **ablative** singular?

b. The meanings of the ablative will be given later.

c. The **vocative** is the case of **address.**

d. The **base** is that part of a word which remains **unchanged** throughout the **declension.** (**silv-** above.)

What are the bases of the following words?

cōpiīs, viās, rēgīnae, fīlia, mēnsārum, puellīs, terram.

The **stem** is the body of a word, to which the endings are attached. The stem of the first declension ends in **a**, which is called the **stem vowel.** This **a**, however, has united by contraction with the vowel of the ending, leaving the base.

e. To learn the **meaning** of a word, notice the **base.** To learn in what **case** a word is, notice the **ending.** The pupil who trains himself to divide Latin words into their bases and endings has mastered one of the points necessary for easy reading.

f. DECLENSION BY ENDINGS.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Base **silv**	NOM. **-a**	NOM. **-ae**
	GEN. **-ae**	GEN. **-ārum**
	DAT. **-ae**	DAT. **-īs**
	ACC. **-am**	ACC. **-ās**
	ABL. **-ā**	ABL. **-īs**
	VOC. **-a**	VOC. **-ae**

20. THE INDIRECT OBJECT.

Rēgīna puellae rosam dat, *The queen gives a rose to the girl.*
Rosa puellae est grāta, *The rose is acceptable to the girl.*

a. What is the case of **puellae** in the first sentence? **Indirect Object.**

This use of the **Dative** is called the Dative of the **Indirect Object,** and is the same in meaning and use as the **indirect object** in **English.**

b. Notice the difference between the direct and the indirect objects in the first sentence. Be careful not to confuse these two "objects."

c. The second sentence illustrates one use of the **dative** with **adjectives.**

21. RULE.—The **nominative** is the case of the **subject**.

22. RULE.—The **direct object** of a verb is put in the **accusative**.

23. RULE.—The **indirect object** of a verb is put in the **dative**.

24.

1. **Silvae multae Galliae sunt māgnae.**
2. **Fīlia puellae rosam māgnam dat.**
3. **Rēgīna fīliae longam mēnsam dat.**
4. **Estne rosa māgna puellae bonae grāta?**
5. **Rēgīna cōpiās māgnās habet.**
6. **Rēgīna terrae puellīs rosās multās dat. Rosae puellīs sunt grātae.**
7. **Puella bonae rēgīnae longam mēnsam dat.**
8. **Habetne rēgīna lātam mēnsam?**
9. **Viae Galliae sunt longae.**
10. **Terrae Galliae silvās multās habent.**
11. **Rēgīna puellās laudat.**
12. **Rēgīna Galbae terrae praedam dat. Praeda rēgīnae Galbae grāta est.**
13. **Rēgīna puellās multās amat.**
14. **Puellae rēgīnae bonae rosās multās et māgnās dant.**
15. **Ubi sunt mēnsae altae et lātae?**

25. (See 15.) Place the verb at the end, except in the two last sentences.

1. The good girls give a large table to the queen. The table is acceptable to the queen.
2. The daughter of the queen has many large roses. The queen gives the roses of the daughter to the girls.
3. The countries of Gaul have many large forests and long roads.
4. The queen gives the plunder of the land to the troops.
5. Where are the countries of Gaul?
6. Are the forests of the country large?

LESSON IV.

26. EXAMPLES.

The queen gives a rose to the girl.

In this sentence notice that we recognize the word "**queen**" as the **subject**, and "**rose**" as the **direct object** of the verb "gives" because the one precedes and the other follows the verb.

Thus the words in an English sentence follow a fixed order : **subject, verb, object.**

The same sentence in Latin reads: **Order of Words.**

Rēgīna puellae rosam dat.

Notice that we recognize the word **rosam** as **direct object** because of its ending **-m**, and **puellae** as the **indirect object** because of its ending **-ae.**

If the words be rearranged,

Rēgīna rosam puellae dat,
Rosam rēgīna puellae dat,

the meaning remains unchanged, for **rosam,** so long as it keeps the ending **-m,** cannot be anything but the direct object, and **puellae,** so long as it keeps the ending **-ae,** will in this sentence remain the indirect object.

a. In a **declarative** Latin sentence the **subject** is usually placed **first.**

b. The verb (excepting **est** and **sunt**) nearly always comes last.

27. EXAMPLES.

Rēgīna Cornēliam, fīliam Galbae, laudat, *The queen praises Cornelia, the daughter of Galba.* Apposition.

Rēgīna Cornēliae, puellae, tubam dat, *The queen gives a trumpet to Cornelia, the girl.*

a. Notice that **fīliam** and **Cornēliam** both refer to the **same person** and are in the **same case.** This is also true of **Cornēliae** and **puellae.**

b. When a noun is joined to another noun as **fīliam** is to **Cornēliam,** or **puellae** to **Cornēliae,** it is said to be in **apposition** with it.

28 RULE.—**Appositives** agree in **case** with the nouns which they limit.

a. An appositive may often be best translated into English by a noun introduced by "as" or "of." For example:

Terra Gallia erat māgna, *The land of Gaul was large.*

Galba ad Galliam lēgātus Gallīs properat, *Galba hastens to Gaul as an envoy to the Gauls.*

29. EXAMPLES.

Cornēlia, puella, erat fīlia rēgīnae, *Cornelia, the girl, was the daughter of the queen.*

a. In this sentence **fīlia,** which is in the predicate of the sentence, denotes the same person as **Cornēlia,** the subject. Nouns used in this way are called **predicate nouns.** Predicate Nouns.

b. How does a **predicate nominative** differ from an **appositive?**

Which is the predicate nominative, and which the appositive, in the following sentence?

Cornēlia, fīlia Galbae, erat bona puella, *Cornelia, the daughter of Galba, was a good girl.*

30. RULE.—A **predicate noun** agrees with the **subject** in **case.**

31. EXAMPLE.

Multae silvae sunt in terrā Galliā, *Many forests are in the land Gaul.*

a. Notice that the preposition **in** is **followed** by the **Ablative** case. *In* with Ablative.

32.

1. **Puella est fīlia rēgīnae.**
2. **Māgna silva erat in terrā.**
3. **In terrīs Galliae erant longae et lātae viae.**
4. **Ubi est puella, fīlia Cornēliae? In silvā est fīlia Cornēliae.**
5. **Cornēlia, puella, fīliae rēgīnae aquam dat.**
6. **Estne rosa in mēnsā?**
7. **Habetne terra Helvētia silvās? In Helvētiā, terrā Galliae, sunt multae et māgnae silvae.**
8. **Cornēliae tuba erat in altā mēnsā.**
9. **Erantne silvae Galliae multae et māgnae?**
10. **Gallia est māgna et lāta terra.**
11. **Puellae Cornēliam, Galbae bonam fīliam, amant.**
12. **Fīliae Galbae Cornēliae puellae rosam māgnam dant.**
13. **Grātae sunt rēgīnae rosae.**
14. **Cōpiae terrae erant māgnae.**
15. **In māgnīs silvīs erant longae viae.**
16. **Praeda terrae est māgna.**
17. **Bonae puellae fīliae Galbae tubās dant.**

33. (Words in parentheses are to be omitted in the Latin.)

1. Is Gaul a large land?
2. In the countries of Gaul are many troops.
3. In Helvetia, a land of Gaul, are large forests.

4. In the land of Gaul [1] is a large and wide forest.
5. The good girls give large roses to Cornelia, the daughter of the queen.
6. The roses are acceptable to Cornelia.
7. The queen praises the girls.
8. The troops of the queen are in the forest.
9. Are the roses upon the table?
10. Where is the daughter of Galba?
11. Galba loves (his) daughter.

[1] Not genitive. (28.)

LESSON V.

THE DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR.

34. EXAMPLE.

Terrae est māgna silva, *There is a large forest for the land,* that is, *the land has a large forest.*

Observe that this sentence has the same meaning as if it were **Terra māgnam silvam habet.** The dative thus used is called the **Dative of the Possessor.**

35. RULE.—The **dative** is used with **sum** to denote the **possessor,** the **thing possessed** being the **subject.** Dative of the Possessor.

36.

1. **Rēgīna māgnam rosam habet.**
2. **Rēgīnae est rosa māgna.**
3. **Rēgīnae sunt rosae multae.**
4. **Tuba est puellae. Tuba puellae est grāta.**
5. **Cornēliae, Galbae fīliae, sunt rosae multae.**
6. **Aqua māgna est in viā.**
7. **Suntne multae rēgīnae bonae?**
8. **Cornēliae fīliae bonae sunt tubae longae.**
9. **Galliae terrīs sunt silvae multae.**
10. **Ubi erat puella, Galbae fīlia bona?**
11. **Praeda in silvā erat.**
12. **Cornēlia fīliās bonās habet. Cornēliae sunt fīliae multae.**
13. **Galliae terrae māgnae et lātae erant silvae multae.**
14. **Rosa Cornēliae est in aquā.**
15. **Galba rēgīnae longam mēnsam dat.**

16. **Estne aqua alta?**

17. **Amatne Galba fīliās?**

18. **Cornēlia, fīlia Galbae, māgnam rosam rēgīnae dat. Grāta rēgīnae est rosa Cornēliae. Cornēliae tubam longam rēgīna dat. Cornēliae est tuba longa.**

19. **Rēgīnae cōpiae erant māgnae.**

37. (When possible, translate the following sentences in two or three ways.)

1. A large forest is in the country of Helvetia (33. n. 1).
2. Cornelia has a rose.
3. Is Cornelia a good girl?
4. Where was the plunder of the land of Helvetia?
5. Has the queen a table?
6. Has the girl, the daughter of the queen, many roses?
7. The water in the road is deep.

LESSON VI.

38. EXAMPLE.

Galba in silvam hastam portat, *Galba carries a spear into the forest.*

In with Accusative.

a. Notice that the preposition **in** here means "into," and is followed by the **accusative silvam,** which is **not** a **direct object;** as is **hastam.**

39. EXAMPLES.

In silvam hastās portant, *They are carrying spears into the forest.*

Omission of Subject.

In silvam properat, *He* (or *she*) *hurries into the forest.*

a. Notice that there is **no subject** expressed in these sentences, but that the subjects "they" and "he" are included in the **verbs** and expressed in the **endings.**

b. The general sense of the sentence determines whether the subject expressed in the singular by the **ending** be "**he,**" "**she,**" or "**it.**"

40.

1. Galba in **terram** Galliam properat.
2. In **silvās** properant.
3. In **terram** multās hastās portant.
4. In **terrās** praedam māgnam portat.
5. Rōma multās **et** lātās **viās habet.**
6. In **terrā** Galliā **sunt** multae **viae. Terrīs** Galliae **sunt** longae **viae.** Galliae **suntne** multae **silvae? Viae** in **silvīs terrae** Galliae **sunt** longae sed nōn lātae.

7. Galba in **silvam** longās hastās portat.
8. Tuba fīliae Galbae erat in altā mēnsā.
9. Galbae fīliās laudant.
10. Puellae hastam **dat.** Nōn grāta puellae **est** hasta.
11. Puellae, fīliae Cornēliae, **sunt** in Rōmā.
12. In Rōmam māgnam praedam multārum **terrārum** Galliae portant.
13. In portā erat rēgīna bona.
14. In **terrā** Helvētiā **cōpiās habet.** In Galliam **cōpiae** properant.
15. In **silvās terrārum** Galliae properant.
16. Hasta longa **est** in **viā.**
17. Fīlia bona **est** rēgīnae.
18. Rōmae **viae sunt** lātae.
19. **Cōpiae** māgnae **sunt** in **terrā** Galliā.
20. Ubi **est** aqua?
21. **Cōpiās** māgnās in Helvētiā nōn **habent.**

41. WORD-LIST.

cōpia, cōpiae, *a supply* (of anything); plural also *troops.*
silva, silvae, *a forest.*
terra, terrae, *a country, or land.*
via, viae, *a road.*
et, *and.*
-ne, *sign of a question* (8. 4).
est, *is.*
sunt, *are.*
dat, he, she, or it *gives, is giving,* or *does give.*
habet, he, she, or it *has, is having,* or *does have.*

42. (When possible, translate the following sentences in two or three ways. Omit words in brackets.)

1. He hurries into the land of Helvetia.
2. In Gaul (there) are many troops. The troops have much plunder. They are carrying the plunder into the forests.
3. The girl, the daughter of Galba, is in the road.

4. They give the spear to the good girl, the daughter of Cornelia.

5. Has Galba a daughter? He has many daughters.

6. Where is Galba's spear?

7. The girls have trumpets.

8. Does the queen praise the girls?

VOCABULARY FOR THE FIRST SIX LESSONS.

alta, *high, deep.*
amat, *loves.* 16, *b.* 39.
aqua, *water.*
bona, *good.*
cōpia, 41.
Cornēlia, *Cornelia.*
dat, *gives.* 16, *b.* 39.
erat, *was.* 16, *b.* 39.
est, *is.* 39.
et, *and.*
fīlia, *daughter.*
Galba, *Galba.*
Gallia, The land *Gaul.*
grāta, *acceptable.*
habet, *has.* 16, *b.* 39.
hasta, *spear.*
Helvētia, The district *Helvetia.*
in, see 31 and 38.
lāta, *wide.*
laudat, *praises.* 16, *b.* 39.
longa, *long.*
māgna, *large.*
mēnsa, *table.*
multa, *much.* Plural. *many.*
-ne, 14, note 1.
nōn, *not.*
porta, *gate.*
portat, *carries.* 16, *b.* 39.
praeda, *plunder.*
properat, *hastens.* 16, *b.* 39.
puella, *girl.*
rēgīna, *queen.*
Rōma, *Rome.*
rosa, *rose.*
sed, *but.*
silva, 41.
sunt, *are.* 39.
terra, 41.
tuba, *trumpet.*
ubi? *where?* 18, note 2.
via, 41.

LESSON VII.

SECOND DECLENSION.

43. The **stem** ends in **o**, which usually disappears by combination with the case-ending.

44. Nouns of the **second declension** ending in **-um** are **neuter.** Stem and Gender.

Others are masculine. (But see 10, 3 and 4.)

45.

	MASCULINE.		NEUTER.
	mūrus, *wall.*		**oppidum,** *town.*
		SINGULAR.	
NOM.	mūr**us,**	(*a*) *wall*	oppid**um**
GEN.	mūr**ī,**	*of* (*a*) *wall*	oppid**ī**
DAT.	mūr**ō,**	*to* or *for* (*a*) *wall*	oppid**ō**
ACC.	mūr**um,**	(*a*) *wall*	oppid**um**
ABL.	mūr**ō**		oppid**ō**
VOC.	(mūr**e**)		(oppid**um**)
		PLURAL.	
NOM.	mūr**ī,**	*walls*	oppid**a**
GEN.	mūr**ōrum,**	*of walls*	oppid**ōrum**
DAT.	mūr**īs,**	*to* or *for walls*	oppid**īs**
ACC.	mūr**ōs,**	*walls*	oppid**a**
ABL.	mūr**īs**		oppid**īs**
VOC.	(mūr**ī**)		(oppid**a**)

a. Nouns in **-us** of this declension have a special form in **e**, which forms their **vocative case**, or case of **address.** **Amīce**, *friend.*

b. The **vocative** of other nouns in all declensions is the **same** in form as the **nominative.** But cp. Vocative Case.

c. How many cases in **mūrus** can you find which have the same ending?

d. Which cases of **oppidum** are alike in the singular? which in the plural?

e. DECLENSION BY ENDINGS.

SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.			NEUTER.
Base **mūr**	NOM. **-us**	Base **oppid**	NOM.	**-um**
	GEN. **-ī**		GEN.	**-ī**
	DAT. **-ō**		DAT.	**-ō**
	ACC. **-um**		ACC.	**-um**
	ABL. **-ō**		ABL.	**-ō**
	VOC. **-e**		VOC.	**-um**

PLURAL.

NOM.	**-ī**	NOM.	**-a**
GEN.	**-ōrum**	GEN.	**-ōrum**
DAT.	**-īs**	DAT.	**-īs**
ACC.	**-ōs**	ACC.	**-a**
ABL.	**-īs**	ABL.	**-īs**
VOC.	**-ī**	VOC.	**-a**

46. (See the vocabularies on pages 259 and 279.)

1. Mārce, **amīce, quid** est **in** oppidō? **In** oppidō **amīcī lēgātī** tēla et **equōs** habent. Cōpia **equōrum** māgna est **in** oppidō. Māgnam cōpiam tēlōrum **lēgātī** populō dant. Māgnus est **numerus captīvōrum in** oppidō. Cōpiae oppidī sunt māgnae.

2. Estne Mārcī **amīcus lēgātus?** Galba, **amīcus** Mārcī et populī, est **lēgātus in** Rōmā, Ītaliae oppidō. Dōna suntne tribūnis, populī **lēgātīs? Lēgātus** tēlum, dōnum populī, habet. Tēla sunt Galbae, **lēgātō.**

3. Māgnus est **numerus** oppidōrum. **Lēgātī** oppidōrum sunt **captīvī.** Multī sunt **captīvī. In** silvīs sunt **equī captīvōrum. Captīvī** multa dōna **amīcīs** dant.

4. **Numerus** māgnus tēlōrum est Mārcō, tribūnō, **lēgātī**

amīcō. Multa tēla tribūnus habet et populō oppidī dat. **In** oppidō sunt **equī** et tēla, dōna **amīcōrum.** Māgnum **numerum equōrum in** silvā tribūnus habet. Quid **amīcīs** Mārcus dat? **Equōs** et tēla, dōna, Mārcus **amīcīs lēgātī** dat.

47. WORD-LIST.

numerus, -ī, *number.*
amīcus, -ī, *friend.*
captīvus, -ī, *prisoner.*
equus, -ī, *horse.*
lēgātus, -ī, *an envoy,* also an officer in the Roman army, *a "legate".*
in, preposition; with ablative, *in* or *on;* with accusative, *into, against.*
quid?, *what?* Neuter nominative or accusative of interrogative pronoun **quis?** (Lesson XVIII.)

48. HINTS FOR WRITING LATIN.

Every word except proper names used in the sentences to be turned into Latin has either been given in the word-lists or else may be found in the Latin-English exercise for the same lesson. For proper names look in the Latin-English vocabulary. Do not look up the words in any English-Latin vocabulary. To do so may seem the quickest way for the first few lessons, but it teaches one very little Latin, and in the long run is sure to prove much the slowest method.

Study 26 again. Do not put down your words at random.

Words not to be rendered in Latin are placed in parentheses.

49. (Omit words in brackets.)

1. The legates are friends of the captives.
2. They give a large number of horses to (their) friends.
3. Do they give the horses to the prisoners, the friends of the envoys?
4. Marcus, has the legate a horse?
5. The legate's friend has a horse in the road.
6. Are (there) large forests in the land of Gaul? (33. n. 1.)

LESSON VIII.

ADJECTIVES OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

50. EXAMPLES.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
	Bonus Galba,	**Bona Cornēlia,**	**Bonum dōnum,**
	Good Galba.	*Good Cornelia.*	*A good gift.*
NOM.	Bonus Galba	Bona Cornēlia	Bonum dōnum
GEN.	Bonī Galbae	Bonae Cornēliae	Bonī dōnī
DAT.	Bonō Galbae	Bonae Cornēliae	Bonō dōnō
ACC.	Bonum Galbam	Bonam Cornēliam	Bonum dōnum
ABL.	Bonō Galbā	Bonā Cornēliā	Bonō dōnō
VOC.	(Bone Galba)	(Bona Cornēlia)	(Bonum dōnum)

a. Observe that **bonus** agrees in **gender** with the **noun** which it limits.

b. Adjectives of the **first** and **second declensions** have **three** sets of **terminations,** in order to agree with any noun in any case. The **masculine** is declined like **mūrus,** the **feminine** like **silva,** and the **neuter** like **oppidum.**

51. Learn the declension of **bonus** (474).

a. Decline **equus dēfessus,** *tired horse,* and **grātum dōnum,** *pleasing gift.*

52. EXAMPLES.

Equus est māgnus, *The horse is large.*
Equī sunt māgnī, *Horses are large.*
Oppidum est parvum, *The town is small.*
Oppida sunt parva, *The towns are small.*
Galba est bonus, *Galba is good.*

Predicate Adjectives.

Adjectives used after **est** and **sunt,** as in these sentences, are called **predicate adjectives.**

How do they differ from **predicate nouns?** (29.)

53.

1. Dōna **multa** bonae fīliae Mārcī sunt.
2. Via Galbae **dēfessī** fīliīs **dēfessīs** est **longa.**
3. Dōnum bonī Mārcī Galbae bonō est **grātum.**
4. Mārcus Galbae fīlius in **oppidum** tēla dōna bona **portat.**
5. Fīliō bonō tribūnī equī sunt **grātī.**
6. In terrā sunt silvae **māgnae. Māgnus** est in terrā Galliā silvārum numerus. **Longae** viae sunt in silvīs. **Nōn grāta** est tribūnīs **dēfessīs** lēgātōrum in silvam fuga. **Nōnne grāta** est populō terrae fuga in silvā captīvōrum?
7. Mūrus **altus** est in silvā. **Māgnam** cōpiam tēlōrum equī et captīvī in silvam **portant.** Fīliis Mārcī **grāta** in silvā sunt tēla, dōna amīcōrum. **Dēfessī** sunt tribūnōrum captīvī. Equī bonōrum lēgātōrum in **oppidum** captīvōs **dēfessōs portant.**
8. **Altum** mūrum habetne **māgnum oppidum? Longus** et **altus** mūrus est **oppidō māgnō. Altō** et **longō** mūrō **oppidī** sunt **multae** portae.

54. WORD-LIST.

altus, -a, -um, *high, tall, deep.*
dēfessus, -a, -um, *weary, tired.*
grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing* (not used of persons).
longus, -a, -um, *long.*
māgnus, -a, -um, *large.*
multus, -a, -um, *much;* plural, *many.*
oppidum, -ī, n., *town.*
nōn, *not.*
portat, *is carrying.*

55.

1. The tall captive is tired.
2. What is the horse carrying into the town?
3. The friends of the ambassador are in the town.
4. He gives a horse to (his) tired friend.
5. The legate has a large number of horses in the forest.
6. Galba, the friend of the captive, is in the road.
7. The road is long and the captives are tired.
8. The legate, the friend of the tribune, is not in the town.

LESSON IX.

56. SECOND DECLENSION—CONTINUED.

Ager, m., *field.* **Vir**, m., *man.* **Puer**, m., *boy.*

	SINGULAR.		
NOM.	ager	vir	puer
GEN.	agrī	virī	puerī
DAT.	agrō	virō	puerō
ACC.	agrum	virum	puerum
ABL.	agrō	virō	puerō
VOC.	(ager)	(vir)	(puer)
	PLURAL.		
NOM.	agrī	virī	puerī
GEN.	agrōrum	virōrum	puerōrum
DAT.	agrīs	virīs	puerīs
ACC.	agrōs	virōs	puerōs
ABL.	agrīs	virīs	puerīs
VOC.	(agrī)	(virī)	(puerī)

a. How does the declension of **ager** differ from that of **puer**?

b. Most nouns and adjectives in **-er** of this declension are declined like **ager**.

57.

Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** shorten the genitive singular ending **-iī** to **-ī**. The **accent** remains **unchanged.**

cōnsilium, gen. **cōnsilī**, *advice, plan.*
fīlius, gen. **fīlī**, *son.*
Pompēius, gen. **Pompēī**, *Pompey.*

The **vocative** singular of proper names in **-ius** and of **fīlius** also ends in **ī**. **Antonius**, vocative, **Antonī.**

58.

1. Captivī aegrī nōn multum frūmentum habent.
2. **Līber** populus **līberam** terram habet.
3. Equī nostrī sunt in **agrīs.**
4. Equī nigrī aegrī Galbae frūmentum nōn habent.
5. Nōnne est aeger Mārcī equus niger?
6. Mūrī oppidī nostrī sunt altī.
7. Amicus noster est aeger.
8. Estne nigrō equō multum frūmentum magnō in **agrō?** Frūmentum equōrum est in **agrīs.** Māgna cōpia frūmentī est in **agrō** aegrō equō.
9. In **conciliō virī cōnsilium** dant. Nōn grātum in **conciliō** est **cōnsilium** nostrōrum lēgātōrum **līberīs virīs.** In nostrō **conciliō līberōrum virōrum cōnsilium** est bonum.
10. Estne fīlia bonī Galbae in **agrō?** In mūrō est Cornēlia, Galbae lēgātī fīlia.
11. Bonōrum **virōrum cōnsilium** est grātum. Grātum **cōnsilium** in oppidō nostrō bonus lēgātus populō dat.
12. Māgnam cōpiam frūmentī in terrā Galliā nigrī captīvī in oppida portant. Multa tēla in terram Galliam lēgātus portat.
13. Māgnum est **concilium virōrum** Rōmae. Nōn māgnum est **concilium līberae** Galliae.

59. WORD-LIST.

ager, agrī, m., *field;* plural, *the country* (as distinguished from the town).
vir, virī, m., *man.*
cōnsilium, -ī, *advice, plan, skill, prudence.*
concilium, -ī, *council.*
līber, lībera, līberum, *free;* plural, m., often *children.*

60. 474.

1. The man's children are tired.
2. The horses are not in the town, but[1] in the country.

[1] sed.

3. He gives advice to the children.

4. In the council the advice of (his) friends was not acceptable to the envoy.

5. The captive does not have friends in the council of the legates.

6. Cornelia is the daughter (27) of Marcus the legate, the friend of the captives.

7. The roads in the forest are long.

8. The troops of the countries of Gaul are in the towns.

LESSON X.

61. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive of **sum** (486). The Verb Sum.

62. 1. Est, erat, erit. 2. Sunt, erant, erunt. 3. Sumus, erāmus, erimus. 4. Sum, este, erās. 5. Eram, es, esse. 6. Erō, eritis. 7. Estis, erātis, eris.

63. In the preceding lessons verb-forms have been used in the **third** person. The forms of the verb **sum** show that there are **endings** to denote the **first** and **second** persons as well. Agreement of Verb with Subject.

a. There are a few such endings in the English language; as, "thou lovest," "he loveth." The English commonly uses the pronoun with the verb, which is seldom done in Latin.

Is "thou," in "thou lovest," really necessary to complete the meaning?

64.

1. Tū, O puer, Galbae aegrī es fīlius.
2. Dēfessī erunt tuōrum amīcōrum līberī.
3. **Ibi nūntius tēla** puerō dat.
4. Amīcus eris puerō, bonī virī fīliō.
5. In Galliā multa **hīberna** Sextius lēgātus habet. Nōn māgna sunt **hīberna, sed** lēgātō erunt grāta.
6. Mārcus est **nūntius.** Mārcō sunt multa **tēla.** Puer erit bonī Mārcī amīcus. Mārcī amīcus erō. Mārcī **nūntī** erimus amīcī. Estne bonum nostrum cōnsilium?
7. In Italiā **frūmentum** habet. Equī multī captivōrum in **hīberna** Sextī Mārcī tilī **arma** portant. In **hībernīs** erant multī virī, **sed** nōn captivī erant. Mārcus tribūnus in **hīberna**

Sextī **nūntiōrum arma** portat. **Arma nūntī** in **hībernīs** bonī lēgātī erunt.

8. Cōpia māgna **frūmentī** dēfessō equō grāta erit. Puerī bonī, este amicī aegrī equī.

9. **Ibi arma** nōn erunt.

10. Tū in māgnis **hībernīs** eris, **sed arma** tua in oppidō erunt.

11. **Ibi** oppidum nōn erit mågnum.

65. WORD-LIST.

nūntius, -ī, *messenger.*

frūmentum, -ī, *grain, provisions.*

tēlum, -ī, *weapon* (especially *a dart*).

hīberna, -ōrum,[1] (plural only) the *winter quarters* for an army.

arma, -ōrum, (in plural only) *weapons* (of all kinds, both for attack and defence).

ibi, *in that place.* Adverb.

sed, *but.*

66.

1. They give a javelin to the boys, the friends of the messenger.

2. There[2] is a large supply of grain in the town, but there are no darts there.[3]

3. They are carrying much grain and many weapons into the winter camp.[4]

4. The winter camp of the legate is in the forest.

5. The man has a long javelin. Is he carrying the javelin into the winter camp?

6. The children of the messenger are giving (his) weapons to the captives.

[1] The full form **castra hīberna** is seldom used.

[2] Notice the two uses of the word "there" in English. The first of these is not found at all in Latin.

[3] For the adverb of place use **ibi**.

[4] Do not forget that this word is plural in Latin.

LESSON XI.

THE VERB SUM—CONTINUED.

67. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative of **sum**. (486.)

68. EXAMPLES.

Frūmentum equīs portātur, *The grain is carried by horses.*

Mārcus gladiō Galbam vulnerat, *Marcus wounds Galba with a sword.* **Ablative of Means or Instrument.**

a. Notice that the **ablatives equīs** and **gladiō** tell us with what, or **by means of what,** some deed is accomplished.

69. RULE.—The **means** or **instrument** of an action is expressed by the **ablative**.

70.

1. Līber vir captīvus fuerat.
2. Māgna erit nova porta.
3. Fīlius nostrī amīcī **gladiō** cum multīs virīs **pūgnat.**
4. Multōs Graecōs in **bellō** armīs Rōmānī vulnerant.
5. In terrā Galliā fuerant multae silvae. Māgnus **fuit** numerus silvārum et agrōrum māgnā in terrā Germāniā, sed **pauca** fuērunt oppida. **Paucae** et longae viae fuērunt māgnīs in silvīs et agrīs Germāniae.
6. Oppidō fuerant mūri et portae. Novum est oppidum et **paucī** sunt virī, sed altus est mūrus. **Gladiōs** multōs amīcī novō **tribūnō** dant. In altō mūrō oppidī sunt virī. **Populō** oppidī victōria in **bellō** erit grāta.
7. Hibernīs mūrī altī fuerant.

8. **Gladium** novum fīliō Mārcus dat. Gladiō virōs **paucōs** fīlius Mārcī vulnerat.

9. Cōnsilium novum lēgātōrum viris in conciliō nōn erit grātum.

10. Portae multae erunt longō in mūrō.

11. Equī māgnum in oppidum multum frūmentum portant.

12. Ibi māgnus numerus **gladiōrum** fuit in viā.

13. In **bellō** tēlīs **paucōs,** sed **gladiīs** multōs, vulnerant.

14. **Populō** grātum dōnum dat.

15. Multum frūmentum equīs in oppidum portat, et **populō** dat.

16. Dēfessī puerī arma **tribūnī** nōn portant.

17. In oppidō frūmentum nōn erit. In agrīs frūmentum multum erit, sed māgnae sunt silvae et longae sunt viae.

71. WORD-LIST.

bellum, -ī, *war.*

gladius, -ī, *sword.*

populus, -ī, *people.*

paucī, -ae, -a, *few.*

pūgnat, *is fighting.*

tribūnus, -ī, *tribune,* sometimes *lieutenant.* There were six military tribunes in each legion (157) of the Roman army. Their duties varied as the general-in-chief saw fit.

72. Words will sometimes occur in these exercises which are not given as definitions in the vocabularies, but the pupil will always be able to find suitable words or expressions in the Latin vocabulary at his command.

1. In the forests and open country[1] of Gaul Cæsar and the Romans are fighting. The Romans are wounding many men with[2] (their) weapons. The Gauls are wounding a few Romans by means of (their) swords and javelins. This[3] will be acceptable to the men in the council, but not to the people in the town. Many men in town are friends of the Gauls.

[1] **ager.** [2] 69. [3] **hōc** (neuter singular).

2. The Romans are fighting in the woods. The arms of the Romans are swords and javelins. The Gauls are wounding many Romans by means of (their) long javelins. They wound the horse of the tribune. But the legate is in the winter camp, and has many men and horses, and large supplies of grain. He hastens (39) with (his) troops into the woods. There (66, n. 2) they wound many of the Gauls by means of (their) javelins and swords.

LESSON XII.

FIRST CONJUGATION. Ā VERBS.

amō (stem **amā**), *love*.

Principal parts: **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus.**

73. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **amō**. (480.)

a. A **verb** in the **Active Voice** represents its **subject** as active (that is, usually, as **doing something**); for instance,

The man hits the boy.

b. A **verb** in the **Passive Voice** represents its **subject** as being **acted upon**; for instance,

The man is hit by the boy.

74. 1. Amat, amābat, amābit. 2. Amātur, amābātur, amābitur. 3. Amant, amantur, amābam. 4. Amābant, amābuntur, amābar. 5. Amābunt, amābantur, amā. 6. Amō, amāre, amārī. 7. Amor, amābāmur, amābāmus. 8. Amābō, amābor, amāmur. 9. Amāmus, amābimur, amāminī. 10. Amābimus, amāre.

75. Inflect, that is, repeat the tenses of, these verbs as you have inflected **amō**:

nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus, *to report* or *tell*.

portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus, *to carry*.

a. To find the stem, drop **-re** of the infinitive.

76.

-ō or **-m**	**-mus**	**-r**	**-mur**	
-s	**-tis**	**-ris**	**-minī**	Personal Endings.
-t	**-nt**	**-tur**	**-ntur**	

These are called the **Personal Endings**. In what tenses are they to be found? What tenses and moods do not have them? Are they found in the tenses of **sum** as well as of **amō**? What do they mean?

77. EXAMPLES.

Galba gladium portat, *Galba is carrying a sword.* Ablative of Agent.

Gladius ā Galbā portātur, *A sword is being carried by Galba.*

Mārcus gladiō vulnerātur, *Marcus is wounded by means of a sword.*

Virī ā lēgātō tubā vocābantur, *The men were called by the legate by means of a trumpet.*

a. Notice that the **object** of the **active verb** in both Latin and English becomes the **subject** of the **passive,** while the **subject** (the **doer** or **agent**) of the **active** is in Latin expressed with the passive by the **ablative** with **ā** or **ab,** which corresponds to the preposition "by."

b. The last two sentences illustrate the difference between the **Ablative of Agent** and the **Ablative of Means.** The **Ablative of Agent** is used regarding **persons,** the **Ablative of Means** regarding **animals** or **things.**

78. RULE.—The **agent** with a **passive verb** is expressed by the **ablative** with **ā** or **ab.**

79.

1. Vir tēlum in hīberna **portābit.**
2. Tēlum in oppidum **ā** virō **portābitur.**
3. Galba Mārcum amīcum **amābat.**
4. Mārcus **ā** Galbā **amābātur.**
5. Līberī, nostrum amīcum **amābitis.**

6. Noster amīcus **ā** līberīs aegrīs **amābitur.**

7. Quid populō **ab** amīcō nostrō **nūntiābitur?**

8. Frūmentum et tēla in oppidum **ā** captīvō bonō **portābuntur.** In hīberna captīvus properat.

9. **Ā** multīs **amāmur.**

10. Cōnsilium nūntī **ā** Galbā **nūntiābitur.**

11. **Nūntiābit**ne Galba in conciliō nūnti cōnsilium?

12. Galbae tēlum **ā** fīliō in oppidum **portābātur.**

13. Fīlius Galbae arma in oppidum **portābat.**

14. Victōria populō **ā** puerō **nūntiābitur.**

15. **Ā** līberīs **amābiminī.**

16. Tribūnus **cum** virīs **pūgnābit.** Tēlīs et gladiīs **pūgnant.** Tribūnus gladiō et tēlīs **vulnerābitur.**

17. In hībernīs tēlīs, sed in agrō gladiīs, tribūnus **cum** virīs **pūgnābat.**

18. Rōmānōrum armīs Graecī **vulnerābantur.** Graecī Rōmānōs nōn **amābant.**

19. Arma tribūnōrum **ā** dēfessīs virīs nōn **portābantur.**

20. Quis frūmentum in oppidum **portābit?** Aeger est tribūnus, sed quid fīlius **nūntiat? Nūntiat,** "**Ā** captīvīs frūmentum in oppidum **portābitur.**"

80. WORD-LIST.

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to like* or *love.*

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to report* or *tell.*

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to carry.*

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to fight.* Followed by **cum,** *with.*

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to wound.*

ā (before a consonant), **ab** (before a vowel), preposition followed by ablative, *by, from.*

cum, preposition followed by ablative, *together with,* sometimes *with.* Denotes accompaniment.

81. (See 72.)

The children of the town are carrying the weapons of the lieutenant into the woods. This (72, n. 3) will

be told to the lieutenant by a boy and will not be pleasing (to him). He will tell the children,[1] "Boys, carry the weapons back again."[2] But the children do not like the lieutenant, and do not carry back[3] the weapons, but hasten (39) into the winter camp and tell the captives, "The lieutenant has no weapons." But the lieutenant tells the boy Marcus, the son[4] of Galba, "Marcus, hasten into the woods and carry (my) javelins into the winter camp." Marcus will carry the javelins to[5] the lieutenant.

[1] Dative. [2] **rūrsus**. [3] **filius**. [4] **ad** (not dative).

LESSON XIII.

FIRST CONJUGATION.—CONTINUED.

82. Learn the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect indicative, active and passive, of **amō**. (480.)

a. The participle **amātus,** used in the compound forms of the passive, is declined like **bonus,** and is treated **in all respects** like an adjective. (50. 474.)

Cornēlia amāta est, *Cornelia was loved.*
Mārcus amātus est.
Frūmentum portātum est, *Grain was carried.*
Galba amātus est.
Amātī sunt, *They were loved.*

83. Verbs have **three stems,** which are given in the Principal Parts: **Portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus; Dō, dare, dedī, datus.** Use of Principal Parts.

The **first** gives the stem of the **Present, Imperfect,** and **Future** tenses: **AMŌ, DŌ.** The **second** gives the **Present Infinitive,** by which the conjugation is distinguished: **amĀRE, dARE.** The **third** gives the stem of the **Perfect, Pluperfect,** and **Future Perfect Active: AMĀVĪ, DEDĪ.** The **fourth** gives the stem of the **Perfect, Pluperfect** and **Future Perfect Passive: AMĀTus, DATus.**

84. Look in a vocabulary as seldom as possible.

First translate the Latin as nearly in the order in which it comes as you can, giving to each word the meaning its ending requires. Do not try to make good English, but only to get the sense and to find the construction of each Latin word. Then go over the sentence Hints for Reading.

again, and turn it into good English. This is especially necessary in a long sentence.

85.

1. Āmīce, esne aeger?

2. Cōpia māgna frūmentī dēfessīs equīs fuerat in agrō.

3. Cum **studiō oppūgnātī sumus.**

4. In hīberna tribūnī arma et frūmentum multum ā captīvīs portāta erant. **Barbarī** virī **pūgnīs** multīs hīberna **oppūgnāvērunt.** Portās hībernōrum cum **studiō barbarī** virī **oppūgnāvērunt,** et multōs amīcōs tribūnī tēlīs vulnerāvērunt. Multōs virōs tribūnus paucīs cum amīcīs in **pūgnā** vulnerāvit.

5. Paucī virī cum māgnō **studiō labōrant. Barbarī** virī nōn **labōrant.** Bonus vir cum cōnsiliō et **studiō labōrat. Labōrābis**ne, puer?

6. Cum māgnō **studiō** populī **barbarī** terram lēgātus **occupāvit.** Māgnō cum **studiō** oppida **oppūgnābat.** Māgnīs **pūgnīs** paucae terrae **occupātae sunt.** Māgnae **pūgnae** erant, et virī multī tēlīs vulnerātī sunt, sed pauca oppida **oppūgnāta sunt.**

7. Māgnō cum cōnsiliō ā Rōmānīs in bellō oppida **oppūgnābantur.** Multīs **pūgnīs** in Galliā ā Rōmānīs oppida **occupāta sunt.** Oppida multa in Galliā **oppūgnābuntur.** Cum **barbarīs** virīs **pūgnīs** multīs Caesar pūgnābit.

8. Terrae novae ā virīs **barbarīs** in bellō māgnō cum **studiō occupātae erant.** Māgnō cum **studiō** populī **barbarī** terram **occupābunt.**

86. WORD-LIST.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to take possession of, to seize.*
oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to attack.*
pūgna, -ae, *a fight.*
labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to work.* Sometimes *to have a hard time.*
barbarus, -a, -um, *uncivilized.*
studium, -ī, *eagerness.*

87. (See 72.)

1. In the woods, in a wide[1] place[2] upon the road, the messenger was attacked. A man wounded (his) horse with a javelin. The messenger fought with the men with (his) sword. But the men were many, and he was tired out by the fight. He told the men (81, n. 1), "I am the messenger of the tribune Sextius; why[3] are you attacking me[4]? Are you not (his[5]) friends?" They told the messenger, "We are the friends of Sextius. We will be your[6] friends."

2. The winter camp of the legate was in the forest. In the winter camp there (66, n. 2) were a great number of captives, and much grain, and many weapons and horses. A large number of Gauls attacked the troops of the legate. In the battle he was wounded with a sword by a man. The Gauls seized the winter camp and carried the grain and weapons into the forest.

[1] **lātus, -a, -um.** [2] **locus.** [3] **cūr.**
[4] **mē.** [5] **ēius.** [6] **tuus, -a, -um.**

LESSON XIV.

THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER

88. EXAMPLES.

Oppidum cum studiō oppūgnāvit, *He attacked the town with eagerness* (or *eagerly*).

Oppidum māgnō cum studiō oppūgnāvit,

Oppidum māgnō studiō oppūgnāvit, Ablative of Manner.

He attacked the town with great eagerness.

Cum studiō, māgnō cum studiō, and **māgnō studiō** express the **manner** of the action.

89. RULE. — The **manner** of an action is expressed by the **ablative** with **cum,** unless an **adjective** is used with the **ablative,** when **cum** may be **omitted.**

RŌMĀNĪ ATQUE GALLĪ.

90. To aid the pupil to acquire the habit of noticing the **endings,** they are in this lesson printed in **heavy faced type.**

Rōma fuit māgnum oppidum Ītaliae, cum altīs et longīs mūrīs. Altae portae erant mūrīs. Frūmentum in oppidum Rōmam equīs ā virīs portābātur, nam multus in oppidō erat populus. Populus Rōmānus multās terrās oppidaque māgna cum cōnsiliō et studiō in bellō occupāvit. Multī Rōmānī nōn labōrābant, sed captīvī labōrābant. Māgnus erat captīvōrum numerus.

Gallī erant barbarī virī quī (106) agrōs Galliae terrae silvāsque occupāverant. Olim bonam terram Ītaliam occupāre temptāvērunt. Oppida oppūgnāvērunt. Rōmānī cum Gallīs pūgnāvērunt, sed tandem superātī sunt, nam multī

erant Gallī. Populus Rōmānus fugā servātus est. Sed Gallī celeriter ex-ivērunt, atque Rōmānī iterum oppidum Rōmam aedificāvērunt.

91. WORD LIST.

mūrus, -ī, *wall.*
bonus, -a, -um, *good.*
atque, *and.*
-que, *and.* (8, 4.)

92.

In the land (of) Italy are great supplies of grain. The Roman people are skilful[1] in war. The cities have high walls. But we Gauls are many and will eagerly attack the forces of the Romans. The Romans will fight with eagerness, but we will seize many towns. We will seize the city Rome. We will carry many captives and weapons and much grain into the country (of) Gaul. This[2] (72, N. 3) plan is acceptable to the men in the council of the Gauls.

[1] Cum cōnsiliō [2] Hōc.

LESSON XV.

93. HIC AND ILLE.

hīc, *this.* **ille**, *that.*

SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	hīc	haec	hŏc	ille	illa	illud
GEN.	hūius	hūius	hūius	illīus	illīus	illīus
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	illī	illī	illī
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hŏc	illum	illam	illud
ABL.	hŏc	hāc	hŏc	illŏ	illā	illŏ

PLURAL.

NOM.	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
GEN.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

a. How do these forms differ from those of nouns of the first and second declensions?

b. **Hīc** refers to what is **near** to the **speaker** in place, time, or thought: **hīc gladius,** *this sword.*

c. **Ille** refers to what is **somewhat remote** from the **speaker** in place, time, or thought: **illud tēlum,** *that dart.*

d. **Ille,** agreeing with a noun sometimes means "*that well-known,*" or "*that renowned.*"

94. EXAMPLES.

Hīc puer est altus; illa puella est parva, *This boy is tall; that girl is small.*

Lēgātus et captīvus sunt amīcī; ille est Rōmānus, hīc Gallus, *The lieutenant and the captive are friends; the former is a Roman, the latter a Gaul.*

Hōc dōnum puellae est grātum, illud puerō, *This gift is pleasing to the girl, that one to the boy.*

a. Notice the meaning of **ille, hīc:** "*the former*," "*the latter*," in the second sentence.

b. An examination of the above shows that **hīc** and **ille** have two uses: (1) as **demonstrative adjectives,** in agreement with nouns, (2) as **demonstrative pronouns,** standing alone.

95.

1. Lēgātō studium illīus tribūnī atque hūius nūntī grātum fuit.

2. Hīc mūrus paucās portās, ille multās, habet.

3. Illīus Galbae gladium portābō.

4. Aeduī et Sēquanī in terrā Galliā diū erant. Illī fuērunt Rōmānōrum amīcī, hī Germānōrum. Suntne illī nostrī amīcī?

5. Secundā pūgnā barbarōs superat, et ibi hīberna **conlocābit.** Ubi hīberna **conlocābit?** nam nōn **idōneus locus** est. Estne **idōneus** ille **locus?** In illō **idōneō locō** hīberna lēgātus **conlocābit.** In hōc **locō** tribūnus multa tēla, sed paucōs gladiōs, habet. In hīs hībernīs amīcī lēgātī frūmentum atque arma cum studiō **conlocāverint.**

6. Nōnne tribūnus huic **fīliō** Mārcī dēfessō grātum dōnum dabit? nam cum studiō labōrat. Illī hunc gladium, huic illud tēlum dabit. In hōc **locō** ā **fīliō** tribūnī lēgātus gladiō vulnerātus erit.

96. WORD-LIST.

locus, -ī, plural, **locī** or **loca,** *a place.*

conlocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to place or station.*

fīlius, -ī, *son.*

idōneus, -a, -um, *suitable.* (Refers to place. For time, **secundus, -a, -um,** *favorable,* is usually used.)

97.

1. The friends of this man are many, but of that (one), few.

2. These men do not fight with eagerness, but those are wounding many Romans with their swords.

3. This legate has a sword, and that (legate) a javelin.

4. A Gaul gave this tired captive a horse.

5. This place is not a suitable (one.)

6. The advice of this lieutenant will not be pleasing to the legates in the council.

98.

1. Cōnsilium nūntī in illō conciliō nūntiātur. Cōnsilium nōn tribūnī sed nūntī lēgātō grātum erit.

2. Caesar cum Helvētiīs in illō **idōneō locō** pūgnāvit. Pūgna māgna fuit sed Rōmānī Helvētiōs superāvērunt.

3. Frūmentum populō nōn fuerat.

4. Hī gladiī novī illīs virīs grātī erunt.

5. Vir in mūrō tēlum pōrtat. Puerō tēlum dabit.

6. **Fīliō idōneum** tēlum dat.

7. Tribūne, ā populō amāberis.

8. Lēgātus populī nōn fueram.

9. Frūmentum in hīberna portābit, sed arma in oppidō **conlocābit.** Hōc cōnsilium lēgātō novō nōn grātum est. In oppidō hīberna **conlocābit.**

99.

This boy is carrying a large sword. With the boy there are many children. He is telling the children (81, n. 1), "In yonder[1] woods there are many Gauls. I will fight with these men and will wound a large number with this sword. Messengers will tell this to the Roman legate. He will give (me) a horse and javelin. Then[2] I will be a lieutenant. Is not this a good plan?"

[1] ille. [2] tum.

LESSON XVI.

100. THE DEMONSTRATIVE IS.

is, *this, that;* also *he, she, it.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
GEN	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

a. **Is** as a pronoun means *he, she, it.* As a demonstrative adjective it is an **unemphatic** *this* or *that* in meaning, standing between **hīc** and **ille**, but somewhat nearer to the latter.

101. TABLE OF USUAL MEANINGS.

is, *he.* **ea**, *she.* **id**, *it;*
also *this, that.*
ēius,
his, her, its.
eōrum, eārum, eōrum,
their,
eum, *him.* **eam**, *her.* **id**, *it;*
also *this, that.*

102. EXAMPLES.

Is vir cum studiō labōrat, *This man labors with eagerness.*
Studium ēius virī laudāmus, *We praise the eagerness of that man.*

Amīcus ēius amātur, *His friend is liked.*

103.

1. Eī fīliae Mārcī dōna **dedistis,** atque grāta fuērunt haec dōna.

2. Eī cum studiō auxilium **dabunt.**

3. Lēgātus in idōneō locō hīberna conlocāverit. In hīberna equīs multa tēla et māgnam cōpiam frūmentī portābit. Gallī haec hīberna oppūgnābunt, sed nōn occupābunt.

4. Nōnne pūgnae **sīgnum dabis?**

II. CAESAR ET ARIOVISTUS.

Ariovistus erat Germānus. Gallōs facile **superāverat.** Caesar atque Rōmānī gladiīs tēlisque cum Ariovistō pūgnāvērunt, eumque in bellō **superāvērunt.** Māgna erat haec pūgna. Māgnum studium pūgnae erat Ariovistō. Multōs virōs atque equōs habuit et Gallōs multīs pūgnīs **superāverat.** Caesar castra cum vāllō portīsque in locō idōneō prope eum conlocāvit, et in haec castra impedīmenta portāvit. Germānōrum castra vāllum nōn habuērunt, nam barbarī erant. In pūgnā Germānīs māgnum fuit studium, sed Rōmānīs cōnsilium atque bona arma fuērunt. Deinde Rōmānī **superāvērunt.** In fugā per silvās multī Germānī, virī, mulierēs, etiam līberī, inter ectī sunt. Ariovistus ipse in Germāniam fūgit. Ita Germānī ā Rōmānīs **superātī sunt.**

104 WORD-LIST.

sīgnum, -ī, *standard* or *ensign, signal.*

dō, dare, dedī, datum, *to give.*

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to surpass;* hence, sometimes, *to conquer.*

ita, adv., *thus, in this way.*

105. (See 72 and 129.)

The lieutenant will give the signal for battle and the men will attack the Gauls with great eagerness.

There are a few Gauls in the road, and a great number in the woods. A few Romans will attack the former with javelins, but the latter will be attacked with swords. In a suitable place in the woods the Gauls have placed (their) children and baggage. The Romans who[1] will fight in the road will easily overcome the Gauls there. Then[2] they will easily seize the baggage of the Gauls. Next[3] they will give help to (their) friends, who[1] will attack those Gauls who are in the woods. Thus the Gauls will easily be conquered.

This is the plan of the lieutenant.

[1] quī. [2] tum. [3] deinde.

LESSON XVII.

106. QUI.

quī, *who, which.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. **Quī** is called the **Relative Pronoun.** The Relative Pronoun.

107. TABLE OF USUAL MEANINGS IN SINGULAR.

quī, quae, *who.* **quod**, *which, that.*

cūius,

of whom, whose, of which.

cuī, *to* or *for whom.* **cuī**, *to* or *for which.*

quem, quam, *whom.* **quod**, *which, that.*

108. EXAMPLES.

Ubi est puer quī temptāvit? *Where is the boy who tried?*

Cōpiae quās habet sunt māgnae, *The supplies which he has are large.*

Puer cuī dōnum dat est parvus, *The boy to whom he gives the gift is small.*

Cōnsilium quod dat est bonum, *The advice which he gives is good.* **Agreement of Relative Pronoun.**

a. Notice that the relative pronouns in these sentences have the **same gender** and **number** as the nouns to which they refer (called their **antecedents**): **quī** as **puer, quās** as **cōpiae, cuī** as **puer, quod** as **cōnsilium.** But the **cases** are often **different.** **Quī** is the subject of **est, quās** the direct object of **habet, cuī** the indirect object of **dat,** and **quod** the direct object of **dat.**

109. RULE.—A **relative pronoun** agrees with its **antecedent** in **gender** and **number,** but its **case** depends upon the **construction of the clause** in which it stands.

110.

1. Vir bonus, cūius fīlius in hōc agrō labōrat, est in **castrīs.**

2. Numerus equōrum, quī in **castra** impedimenta portabunt, est māgnus. In **castrīs** sunt multa sīgna.

3. Virī, quibus erant gladiī, paucī erant.

4. Cōnsilium nūntī populō nōn erit grātum.

5. Illī equī, quibus Mārcī fīlius in viā frūmentum portat, sunt nigrī. Dēfessus est fīlius Marcī, quī in **castra** frūmentum portat. Aeger est vir, cūius equī in viā sunt.

6. Nōn grāta fīliae Galbae sunt dōna quae puer dat. Aeger est puer, qui haec dōna fīliae dabat.

7. Tribūnus est hīc vir, cuī multa arma sunt, sed ā barbarīs captīvīs, quōs hī equī portābant, vulnerātus est.

111. WORD-LIST.

castra, -ōrum (in plural only), *camp.*

112. (See 129.)

1. The man whom you wounded is a messenger.

2. The men to whom you gave the swords which were on the wall are Gauls.

3. This is the lieutenant whose baggage was seized.
4. This is the boy to whom you gave the gift.
5. These children wounded the son of Marcus with this javelin, which you gave to (your) friend.
6. This man to whom you gave the long sword is not (your) friend.
7. The tired captive to whom you gave the horse is not a Gaul.
8. The weapons which you gave to the men are in the camp.

LESSON XVIII.

113. QUIS.

quis, *who? which? what?*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

114. EXAMPLES.

Quis castra oppūgnābit? *Who will attack the camp?*
Quis erit nūntius? *Who will be a messenger?*
Quid amant Gallī? *What do the Gauls love?*
Quae oppida ā Rōmānīs occupāta sunt?
What towns have been seized by the Romans?

a. Notice that **quis** in the first sentence and **quid** in the third are **interrogative pronouns,** while **quis** in the second sentence and **quae** in the fourth are **interrogative adjectives,** and agree with their nouns like other adjectives.

b. **Quī** is used instead of **quis** and **quod** instead of **quid** as interrogative adjectives:

Quod oppidum ā Rōmānīs occupātum est?

115.

1. Ā quibus haec castra oppūgnābuntur?
2. Quī virī hanc terram occupāverint?

3. Quid **est** in illō mūrō?
4. Quī vir nōn amat puerōs?
5. Cuī dabit tribūnus hōc **novum** gladium?
6. Quibus virīs nōn erit **auxilium** amicōrum grātum?
7. Quōs agrōs habet ille vir?
8. Quem vulnerāvistī?
9. Quid est lēgātō in hībernīs?
10. Quam portam tribūnus oppūgnābit?
11. Ā quō arma illa ibi sunt conlocāta?
12. Quibus **novīs** armīs illum virum lēgātus vulnerāvit?
13. Ā quibus Rōmānī superātī sunt?
14. Cūius arma ille puer habet?
15. In quō locō lēgātus **impedīmenta** conlocābit? In **novīs** hībernīs **impedīmenta** conlocat.
16. Quī bonus vir **auxilium** amīcīs nōn dat?
17. Quōs virōs **auxiliō** fīliōrum tribūnus vulnerāvit?
18. Cūius tribūnī in hībernīs sunt **impedīmenta**? In oppidum equīs **impedīmenta** portābuntur.
19. Quod **novum** cōnsilium nūntius dabit?

116. WORD-LIST.

novus, -a, -um, *new*. Hence also, *strange*.

auxilium, -ī, *aid* or *help*. Plural usually *auxiliaries, light armed troops (slingers, bowmen, spearmen*, etc.)

impedīmentum, -ī, a *hindrance*. In plural, the *baggage* or *baggage train of an army*.

117.

1. Upon what road were these wearied men attacked by the forces of the Gauls? With what arms did the Gauls fight? Whom did they wound with the javelins? Whose horse was wounded in the fight?

2. By whom will this be told to the men in the council? Will the gate of the winter camp be at-

tacked by the Gauls? Is the winter camp located in a suitable place?

3. Is that tall man the lieutenant? Why[1] is he loved by the men? The men are few, but they will fight very eagerly (with great eagerness).

4. What towns of the Gauls will they attack?

5. What is this man carrying?

6. With whose sword was that man wounded?

7. To whom will you give advice?

8. In what place shall we place the camp?

[1] cūr.

LESSON XIX.

READING LESSON.

118. PUER ET AMĪCUS.

Puer quī in agrō erat amīcō ita dīxit, "Quibus sunt illī equī quī in hōc agrō erant?"

"Equī sunt eōrum Rōmānōrum quī in silvā cum Gallīs pūgnābant." Ita amīcus dīxit.

"Cūr illī quī cum Gallīs pūgnāvērunt ex equīs in silvam nōn īvērunt?"

"Olim ita īvērunt, sed Gallī facile equōs vulnerābant, atque Rōmānī multi superātī sunt. Facile in agrō ex equīs pūgnant, sed in silvīs nōn ita est."

"Illud sīgnum quid est?"

"Sīgnum in illīs castrīs ā tribūnō datur. Nōn pūgnae sīgnum dat, nam prope Gallī nōn sunt."

"Vidē! Multī virī in portā mūrīsque castrōrum sunt. Id sīgnum aliud, nōnne in silvā datur?"

"Ā Gallīs id datur. Prope Gallī sunt. Fuge!"

Sed puerī amīcus ā Gallīs interfectus est, atque puer ipse vulnerātus est.

119.

Ariovistus was a German who greatly enjoyed a fight.[1] He seized the fields of the Sequani, who were Gauls, and conquered the Haedui in a great battle. The Haedui, who were friends of the Roman people,

[1] Compare 103, II.

told them,[1] "The Germans, who have conquered the Gauls, are seizing the land of Gaul. Are the Germans friends of the Roman people?" The Romans sent word[2] to Ariovistus, "We are the friends of the Haedui." This was not pleasing to Ariovistus. He sent word to the Romans, "Will you fight the Germans? They have never[3] been conquered." But Caesar with his forces attacked the Germans and conquered Ariovistus.

[1] Singular. [2] **nūntiāre.** [3] **numquam.**

ACIĒS RŌMĀNA BARBARŌS OPPŪGNAT.
(From a column at Rome, of the second century after Christ.)

Notice the **aciēs,** composed of **mīlitēs,** with **sagittāriī** and **other auxilia** at the ends.

LESSON XX.

120. THE DEMONSTRATIVES ISTE, IDEM, IPSE.

īdem, *the same.*

SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	īdem	eadem	idem
GEN.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem
DAT.	eīdem	eidem	eidem
ACC.	eundem	eandem	idem
ABL.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

PLURAL.

NOM.	eīdem / iīdem	eaedem	eadem
GEN.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT.	eīsdem / iīsdem	eīsdem / iīsdem	eīsdem / iīsdem
ACC.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
ABL.	eīsdem / iīsdem	eīsdem / iīsdem	eīsdem / iīsdem

ipse, *self.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

Iste, ista, istud, *that, that of yours.*

Iste is declined like **ille.** (93.)

121. EXAMPLES.

Hīc īdem vir eum vulnerāvit, *This same man wounded him.*

Lēgātus ipse eum vulnerāvit, *The legate himself wounded him.*

Ipse virum vulnerāvistī, *You wounded the man yourself.*

Istum gladium eī dedī, *I gave him that sword of yours.*

a. **Īdem** and **iste** can be used as either **demonstrative adjectives** or **demonstrative pronouns.** (Cp. 94, *b.*)

b. **Iste** is used in speaking of that which has some **relation** to the **person addressed.** It sometimes denotes contempt.

Do "of yours," "of his," sometimes suggest contempt in English?

c. **Ipse,** strictly speaking, like the English "*self,*" is not used alone, but in agreement with a noun or pronoun. Sometimes the noun or pronoun is understood from the verb ending, as in the third sentence.

122.

1. Quae nova arma barbarī virī habent?
2. In quod oppidum sunt impedīmenta portāta?
3. Quis bellō Gallōs superāvit?
4. Ad eandem portam properāvērunt.
5. Hīc est iste gladius quō ipse vulnerātus es.
6. Tēlum atque equus sunt dōna ēiusdem virī. Istī puerō haec dōna ipse dedit.
7. Tribūnus ipse lēgātum ipsum vulnerāvit.
8. Cuī lēgātō grāta erat nūntiōrum fuga?
9. In quā terrā sunt silvae?
10. In agrīs cum studiō labōrābitis.
11. Eadem castra cum cōpiīs lēgātī occupāvērunt.
12. In conciliō ipsō Gallōrum ille hōc cōnsilium lēgātīs ipsis nūntiāvit.
13. In bellō quod auxilium ā tribūnīs lēgātō datur? Grātum auxilium gladiīs in pūgnā tribūnī lēgātō dant.

123.

1. To whom does that sword belong?
2. Are these the sons of the same man?
3. You yourself gave the signal of battle, and with a few men attacked the tribune himself.
4. These Gauls attacked the gate[1] of the camp itself.
5. That captive of yours is not at work.
6. The legates placed the camps in the same place.
7. The messenger himself, the friend of the tribune, was wounded by the latter's captive.
8. What weapons do the men have?

[1] porta.

LESSON XXI.

124. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

quīdam, *a, a certain* (*person or thing*).

SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
GEN.	cūiusdam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
DAT.	cuīdam	cuīdam	cuīdam
ACC.	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
ABL.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL.

NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
DAT.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
ACC.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

aliquis, *some, any* (*person or thing*).

SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
GEN.	alicūius	alicūius	alicūius
DAT.	alicuī	alicuī	alicuī
ACC.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
ABL.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL.

NOM.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
GEN.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
DAT.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
ACC.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
ABL.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

a. Is the **quis** of this compound declined differently from the interrogative **quis ?**

b. **Aliquid** is used as a noun, **aliquod** as an adjective.

125. I. The following adjectives, like the pronouns, end in **-īus** in the genitive singular of all genders, and in **-ī** in the dative:

alius, alia, aliud, *another.*
nūllus, -a, -um, *no one, none, no.*
sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, sole.*
tōtus, -a, -um, *whole.*
ūllus, -a, -um, *any.*
ūnus, -a, -um, *one, alone.*

alter, altera, alterum, *the other of two.*
neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither of two.*
uter, utra, utrum, *which of two ?*
uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each of two, both.*

II. DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	**alius**	**alia**	**aliud**
GEN.	**alīus**	**alīus**	**alīus**
DAT.	**aliī**	**aliī**	**aliī**
ACC	**alium**	**aliam**	**aliud**
ABL.	**aliō**	**aliā**	**aliō**
VOC.	(**alius**	**alia**	**aliud**)

The plural is regular. (474.)

126. TABLE OF MEANINGS.

alius . . . alius, *one, . . . another.*
alius . . . aliud, *one one thing . . . another another.*
alter . . . alter, *the one, the other.*

Alius aliud portat, *One carries one (thing), another (carries) another.*

127. 1. Multī erant nūntiī, atque eōrum alius aliud nūntiābat.

2. Aliī ad portam castrōrum, aliī ad impedīmenta, properāvērunt.

3. Neutra hīberna in locō idōneō ā lēgātīs conlocāta sunt.

4. Aliī tēlum, aliī gladium dabis.

5. Alterī hīc equus, alterī ille datus est.

6. Sī ab utrōque lēgātō oppidum occupātum erit, neutrī oppidī populus frūmentum dabit.

7. Multī cōnsilia Galbae lēgātō nūntiābant, sed cōnsilium istīus nūntī sōlius fuit grātum. Nūllī cōnsilia bona aliī nūntiī nūntiāvērunt.

8. Tōtī conciliō hōc cōnsilium est grātum, sed illud nūllīs.

9. Alia hīberna in aliīs locīs Caesar habet, sed in hīs sōlīs sunt māgnae cōpiae.

10. Aliquis tribūnus hīs virīs quōsdam captīvōs dedit.

11. Cuī meum gladium dedistī? Cuīdam puerō dedī.

128.

1. Some attacked the gate,[1] others the wall.

2. Some messengers announce one (thing), others another. (Express in four words.)

3. Certain (men) seized all the grain in the city.

4. To neither of these children has any one given any gift. (94, sentence 3.)

5. One attacked the camp, the other the town. Both were wounded.

6. He gave javelins to many men, but he gave a sword to one man only.

7. Some men attacked the winter camp in one place, some in another.

[1] porta.

129. WORD-LIST FOR REVIEW.

cōpia	auxilium	amō,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātus
pūgna	bellum	conlocō	"	"	"
silva	concilium	labōrō	"	"	"
terra	cōnsilium	nūntiō	"	"	"
via	frūmentum	occupō	"	"	"
	impedimentum	oppūgnō	"	"	"
amīcus	oppidum	portō	"	"	"
captīvus	sīgnum	pūgnō	"	"	"
equus	studium	superō	"	"	"
fīlius	tēlum	vulnerō	"	"	"
gladius					
lēgātus	altus, -a, -um	dō, dare, dedī, datus			
locus	barbarus, -a, -um				
mūrus	bonus, -a, -um	-ne			
numerus	dēfessus, -a, -um	et, atque, -que			
nūntius	grātus, -a, -um	in			
populus	idōneus, -a, -um	ā, ab			
tribūnus	liber, -a, -um	cum			
	longus, -a, -um	nōn			
ager	māgnus, -a, -um	ibi	arma		
vir	multus, -a, -um	sed	castra		
	novus, -a, -um		hīberna		
	paucī -ae, -a				

Mark the words whose meanings you do not recollect, and pay especial attention to them.

LESSON XXII.

THIRD DECLENSION.

130. The stem ends in a consonant (either a mute or a liquid (2)) or in **i**.

MUTE STEMS.

Prīnceps, M., *chief.* Stem **princip-**	**Facultās**, F., *resources.* St. **facultāt-**	**Dux**, M., *leader.* St. **duc-** (2, 3)	**Caput**, N., *head.* St. **capit-**

SINGULAR.

NOM.	princeps	facultās	dux	caput
GEN.	principis	facultātis	ducis	capitis
DAT.	principī	facultātī	ducī	capitī
ACC.	principem	facultātem	ducem	caput
ABL.	principe	facultāte	duce	capite
VOC.	(prīnceps)	(facultās)	(dux)	(caput)

PLURAL.

NOM.	principēs	facultātēs	ducēs	capita
GEN.	principum	facultātum	ducum	capitum
DAT.	principibus	facultātibus	ducibus	capitibus
ACC.	principēs	facultātēs	ducēs	capita
ABL.	principibus	facultātibus	ducibus	capitibus
VOC.	(principēs)	(facultātēs)	(ducēs)	(capita)

a. To find the stem, drop the ending of the genitive singular.

b. Observe that the last vowel in the stem is sometimes changed in forming the nominative. No rule can be given for this change.

c. Notice that **neuters** have the **accusative** and **nominative alike.** Is this true of neuter nouns in the second declension?

d. Decline also **rēx, rēgis,** m., *king*; **lapis, lapidis,** m., *stone*; **eques, equitis,** m., *horseman*; **comes, comitis,** m., *companion*; **pāx, pācis,** f., *peace.*

e. Decline together **ille prīnceps, mīles bonus, id caput.**

131. ALLIED WORDS.

Some of the words in the following list have come directly from Latin words. Some come from the Latin through the French in the lists given later.

As far as possible analyze the English word, removing prefixes or endings and noting their meanings. Then find the allied Latin word, which should be one of those already memorized. Then give the meaning, (1) of the Latin word, (2) of the English word.

Agriculture	Bellicose	Territory	Unpopular
Amicable	Multiform	Studious	

132. LICINIUS ATQUE CLAUDIUS.

Olim Licinius, quī māgnus erat **prīnceps,** oppidum oppūgnābat. Multī **mīlitēs, peditēs equitēs**que, eī erant. In eō oppidō fuit Claudius, rēx, cum populō,—virīs, mulieribus, līberīsque. Diū hōc oppidum, in quō Claudius fuit rēx, ille **prīnceps** cum **mīlitibus** occupāre **temptābat,** nam in eō fuit māgna praeda, et arma et frūmentum. Sed cum virtūte **mīlitēs** oppidī prō mulieribus līberīsque pūgnābant. Portam oppidī māgnō studiō **peditibus** Licinius occupāre **temptāvit.** In mūrō tēlīs rēx atque **mīlitēs** oppidī pugnāvērunt. Deinde sīgnum datum est atque subitō eōs **peditēs prīncipis** Licinī quī ad portam pūgnābant **mīlitēs** Claudī superāre **temptāvērunt.** Multōs **mīlitēs** vulnerāvērunt, atque pauci interfectī sunt. Multī **peditēs** Licinī, dēfessī, superābantur. Id **prīncipī equitum** nūntiātum est, atque cum

equitibus auxilium Liciniō dedit. Diū fortiter cum Claudiō pūgnābant. Licinī equus niger vulnerātus est, sed ā **prīncipe equitum** alius equus eī datus est. Claudium rēgem Licinius **prīnceps** vīdit, et eum tēlō vulnerāre **temptāvit.** Claudius gladiō caput Licinī vulnerāvit. Tum victōria erat rēgī, nam Licinī **mīlitēs** fugā sē servāre **temptāvērunt.** Licinius ipse paucīs **equitibus** in silvam portātus est, et ita servātus est.

133. WORD-LIST.

mīles, mīlitis, m., *soldier.*
eques, equitis, m., *horseman.*
pedes, peditis, m., *foot-soldier.*
prīnceps, prīncipis, m., *a leader, chief.*
temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *to try.*

134.

Then (99, N. 2) Claudius, rejoicing,[1] with a few horsemen hastily[2] tried to seize the baggage of the soldiers of Licinius. But at the place where[3] the baggage had been placed there were a few foot-soldiers of Licinius. Their leader saw Claudius and said to the soldiers, "That man is a chief, for he has a good horse and good weapons. I will give many gifts to the man who will attack and wound him." He gave the signal of battle. They eagerly attacked Claudius and his horsemen.

[1] **laetus, -a, -um.** [2] **celeriter.** [3] **ubi.**

LESSON XXIII.

THIRD DECLENSION.

135. MUTE STEMS.—*Continued.*

mīles, m., *soldier.*	**virtūs**, f., *manliness.*	**pēs**, m., *foot.*
Stem **mīlit-**	St. **virtūt-**	St. **ped-**
	SINGULAR.	
NOM. mīle**s**	virtū**s**	pē**s**
GEN. mīliti**s**	virtūti**s**	pedi**s**
DAT. mīlitī	virtūtī	pedī
ACC. mīliti**em**	virtūti**em**	pedi**em**
ABL. mīlitē	virtūtē	pedē
VOC. (mīle**s**)	(virtū**s**)	(pē**s**)
	PLURAL.	
NOM. mīlitē**s**	virtūtē**s**	pedē**s**
GEN. mīliti**um**	virtūti**um**	pedi**um**
DAT. mīliti**bus**	virtūti**bus**	pedi**bus**
ACC. mīlitē**s**	virtūtē**s**	pedē**s**
ABL. mīliti**bus**	virtūti**bus**	pedi**bus**
VOC. (mīlitē**s**)	(virtūtē**s**)	(pedē**s**)

a. Decline also **obses, obsidis**, m., *hostage;* **pedes, peditis**, m., *foot-soldier;* **grex, gregis**, m., *flock, herd;* **cīvitās, cīvitātis**, f., *state* (*body of citizens*).

b. Decline together **pēs dēfessus; ille obses; haec virtūs.**

136. EXAMPLES.

Homō studiō laudātur, *The man is praised on account of (because of) his eagerness.*

Eques ā rēge virtūte laudābitur, *The horseman will be praised by the king for his bravery.*

Mīles longō itinere est dēfessus, *The soldier is tired with the long march.* Ablative of cause.

a. Notice that the **ablatives studiō, virtūte, itinere,** denote the **cause.**

b. Notice the number of expressions the English has to denote cause. Are there other expressions besides the three given here?

137. RULE. **Cause** may be expressed by the **ablative.**

a. **By what? Why? How? By whom?**
Can the **ablative** case answer all of these questions?

138. ALLIED WORDS.

Copious	Magnify	Novel	Paucity
Liberate	Multiple	Occupation	

139.

1. Quis illī mīlitī **virtūte** gladium dabit? Gladius eī **virtūte** ab hōc prīncipe dabātur.

2. Prīnceps **virtūte** et māgnā **fortūnā** quem vulnerābat? Equitem vulnerāvit, cūius equus frūmentī **inopiā** labōrābat.

3. Eīs amīcīs Mārcī quī māgnā **virtūte** pūgnant **inopia** frūmentī est.

4. Prīnceps bonā **fortūnā** pūgnāvit, nam **virtūte** rēgem superāvit.

5. Mīlitēs quī erant in hāc **parte** mūrī **inopiā** gladiōrum celeriter interfectī sunt.

6. In idōneō locō māgnam **partem** impedīmentōrum conlocāverit.

7. Equī **pedem** vulnerāre temptābō.

8. Bonā **fortūnā** gladiō ēius nōn vulnerābātur.

9. **Inopiā** equōrum in his hibernis māgnam **partem** impedīmentōrum conlocāverat.

10. Equī longā viā erunt dēfessī atque **pedēs** lapidibus vulnerābuntur.

11. Māgnā **fortūnā** mīlitēs quī hanc **partem** castrōrum oppūgnābant nōn vulnerābantur.

12. **Partī** dēfessōrum equitum frūmentum nōn erit.

13. Huic puerō nōn est bona **fortūna.**

14. **Virtūte** equitum hūius terrae māgnam **partem** occupāverās.

15. Equī frūmenti et aquae **inopiā** labōrant.

140. WORD-LIST.

virtūs, virtūtis, f., *manliness, bravery.*
pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*
pars, partis, f., *part,* hence *region, place, direction.*
Declined like hostis, 147.

inopia, inopiae, *lack.*
fortūna, -ae, *luck, chance,* sometimes *fate.*

141. LICINIUS AND CLAUDIUS.—*Concluded.*

The footmen attacked the horsemen of Claudius. They tried to wound the horses with their javelins; then [1] with their swords attacked the men whose horses had been wounded.

By a strange chance a javelin wounded both [2] the foot of Claudius and (his) horse. The horsemen tried to help him, but they were few, and many footmen eagerly attacked them. Thus they were overcome. Then (99, N. 2) the footmen assaulted Claudius. "Give up (your) sword, for [3] you are a captive." "Never," [4] said [5] Claudius, "will I, who have overcome Licinius, be the captive of his footmen." He fought with great bravery with his sword, but they attacked him with javelins. Thus he was killed. [6]

[1] **deinde.** [2] See **et** in vocabulary. [3] **nam.** [4] **numquam.** [5] **dixit.** [6] **interfectus est.**

LESSON XXIV.

142. THIRD DECLENSION.

LIQUID STEMS.

homō, m., *man.*	**labor**, m., *labor.*	**pater**, m., *father.*	**exsul**, m. and f., *exile.*
Stem **homin-**	St. **labor-**	St. **patr-**	St. **exsul-**

SINGULAR.

NOM.	homō	labor	pater	exsul
GEN.	hominis	labōris	patris	exsulis
DAT.	hominī	labōrī	patrī	exsulī
ACC.	hominem	labōrem	patrem	exsulem
ABL.	homine	labōre	patre	exsule
VOC.	(homō)	(labor)	(pater)	(exsul)

PLURAL.

NOM.	hominēs	labōrēs	patrēs	exsulēs
GEN.	hominum	labōrum	patrum	exsulum
DAT.	hominibus	labōribus	patribus	exsulibus
ACC.	hominēs	labōrēs	patrēs	exsulēs
ABL.	hominibus	labōribus	patribus	exsulibus
VOC.	(hominēs)	(labōrēs)	(patrēs)	(exsulēs)

lītus, n., *coast.*	**opus**, n., *work.*
Stem **lītor-**	Stem **oper-**

	Singular.	
Nom.	lītus	opus
Gen.	litor**is**	oper**is**
Dat.	litor**ī**	oper**ī**
Acc.	lītus	opus
Abl.	litor**e**	oper**e**
Voc.	(lītus)	(opus)
	Plural.	
Nom.	litor**a**	oper**a**
Gen.	litor**um**	oper**um**
Dat.	litor**ibus**	oper**ibus**
Acc.	litor**a**	oper**a**
Abl.	litor**ibus**	oper**ibus**
Voc.	(litor**a**)	(oper**a**)

a. What is the ending of the Nominative and Accusative neuter plural? What is the ending in these cases of the neuter nouns of the second declension?

b. Decline also **flūmen, flūminis,** n., *river;* **agmen, agminis,** n., *a marching body of troops;* **tempus, temporis,** n., *time;* **regiō, regiōnis,** f., *region;* **frāter, frātris,** m., *brother.*

143. ALLIED WORDS.

Hibernate	Portable	Temptation
Location	Principal	Virility
Impediment	Renovate	

144. Mīles et Tribūnus.

Olim oppidum oppūgnābātur. Aliquis mīles cūius pēs vulnerātus erat ex pūgnā ab amīcō portābātur. Ēius caput lapis ex ballistā quae in mūrō oppidī erat abripuit, sed hōc amīcus nōn vīdit. Eī tribūnus dīxit, "Cūr mīlitem qui interfectus est portās?" "Nōn interfectus est," amīcus dixit. "Pēs ēius vulnerātus est." "Stultissime!" tribūnus respondit, "caput eī nōn est." Tum amīcus hōc vīdit. "Tribūne,"

dīxit, "vērum nūntiās. Nōn stultus tamen sum, nam hīc mīles ipse mihi nūntiāvit, 'Meum pedem tēlum vulnerāvit.'"

HANNIBAL ET SCĪPIŌ.—I.

Diū Carthāgō in Āfricā māgnum oppidum erat, atque multās terrās secundīs bellīs occupāverat. Rōma erat oppidum **ad flūmen** Tiberim atque multōs populōs Ītaliae Rōmānī superāverant. **Hominēs summō** studiō [1] bellī erant.

In primō bellō cum **hominibus** Carthāginis Rōmānī paene superātī sunt, sed **summō** studiō cōnsiliōque tandem victōria eīs fuit. Pater Hannibalis, **homō summō** cōnsiliō,[1] quī Hamilcar appellātus est, diū in Sicīliā cum Rōmānīs pūgnābat. Deinde in Hispāniā **proeliīs** secundīs barbarōs **hominēs** oppūgnāvit.

145. WORD-LIST.

homō, hominis, m. (and f.), *man* (sometimes *mankind*).
annus, annī, m., *year*.
proelium, proelī, *battle*.
flūmen, flūminis, n., *river*.
summus, -a, -um, *greatest, highest*.
ad, prep. with acc. *to, at*. Used with the *place to which*.

146. REGULUS.

The people of Rome were very skilful in war, and fought with the people of Carthage in many battles. In the first war with Carthage, Regulus, a Roman chief, with (his) soldiers was defeated in a battle at a place near[2] Carthage. But after[3] IV years the men of Carthage were defeated by the Romans in Sicily. Then the chiefs of Carthage said,[4] "Regulus, the captive Roman, shall be an envoy to Rome. Peace (130, d) will be pleasing to this Roman captive, for if[5] there be peace he will be free."

[1] See 149. [2] prope. [3] post. [4] dīxērunt. [5] sī.

LESSON XXV.

THIRD DECLENSION.—CONTINUED.

147. STEMS IN **i**.

	collis, m., *hill.* Stem **colli-**	**hostis**, m., *enemy.* St. **hosti-**	**mare**, n., *sea.* St. **mari-**
		SINGULAR.	
NOM.	collis	hostis	mare
GEN.	collis	hostis	maris
DAT.	collī	hostī	marī
ACC.	collem	hostem	mare
ABL.	collī, -e	hoste	marī
VOC.	(collis)	(hostis)	(mare)
		PLURAL.	
NOM.	collēs	hostēs	maria
GEN.	collium	hostium	
DAT.	collibus	hostibus	maribus
ACC.	collīs, -ēs	hostīs, -ēs	maria
ABL.	collibus	hostibus	maribus
VOC.	(collēs)	(hostēs)	(maria)

a. How do the declensions of **collis** and **hostis** differ? The most common of the nouns declined like **collis** are **fīnis**, *end;* **ignis**, *fire;* **cīvis**, *citizen.* Stems in i.

b. Nouns having **i-stems** are **marked** in the **vocabulary**, thus, **fīnis, -is (fīni-)**.

c. Decline also **latus, lateris**, n., *side* (cp. **lātus, -a, -um**); **multitūdō, -inis**, f., *multitude;* **pars, partis** (parti-), f.,

part; **rūpēs, rūpis** (**rūpi-**), f., *rock, cliff;* **vallis, vallis** (**valli-**), *valley.*

148. EXAMPLES.

Mārcus mīles fuit māgnā virtūte, } *Marcus was a soldier*
Mārcus mīles fuit māgnae virtūtis, } *of great bravery.*
Ītalia est terra multīs urbibus, } *Italy is a land with*
Ītalia est terra multārum urbium, } *many cities.*

a. Notice that in these sentences the ablative or genitive is used with an adjective to **describe Mārcus** or **Ītalia.**

149. RULE. A person or thing may be **described** by the **ablative** or the **genitive** of a noun, if an **adjective** be used with the **noun.** **Descriptive Ablative or Genitive.**

a. The noun **must** be limited by an **adjective.** That is, it is incorrect to say in Latin, as we do in English, "a man of courage," or "a man of wealth." Some **adjective** must be used: "a man of great courage," "of abundant wealth."

150. ALLIED WORDS.

Altitude	Auxiliary	Depopulate	Innumerable
Armory	Bonus	Filial	Legation

151. HANNIBAL ET SCĪPIŌ.—II.

Scipiō Rōmānus et Hannibal puerī **annīs**[1] paucīs cum patribus fuērunt in proeliīs, ille in Ītaliā, hīc in Hispāniā. Fuērunt summae virtūtis. Scipiō, adulēscēns XVII **annōrum,** patrem in proeliō ad Ticīnum flūmen servāvit. Hannibal, adulēscēns nōn XX **annīs** cum patre oppida in Hispāniā oppūgnāvit.

Multīs cum hominibus, peditibus equitibusque, per Galliam, terram māgnīs cum silvīs flūminibusque altīs, ivit atque Rōmānōs in Ītaliā oppūgnāvit. Cum patre Scīpiōnis ad flūmen Ticīnum pūgnāvit. In proeliō ad locum quī Cannae appellātus est LXX mīlia mīlitum māgnusque numerus prīn-

[1] See 145.

cipum Rōmānōrum interfectī sunt. Tamen Rōmānī summā virtūte nōn superātī sunt.

Hasdrubal, frāter Hannibalis, post annōs VIIII eī auxilium dare temptāvit, et multīs cum hominibus per Galliam ad Ītaliam īvit. In proeliō prope flūmen Metaurum ā Rōmānīs interfectus est. Caput ēius ad Hannibalem portātum est. "Ō Carthāgō, tuam fortūnam āgnōscō!" dīxit Hannibal. Tum eī auxilium nōn erat. Scīpiō post annōs III Āfricam occupāre temptāvit. Hannibal suās cōpiās ad Āfricam trānsportāvit, sed in proeliō ad locum Zamam superātus est.

152. REGULUS.—*Continued.*

But Regulus loved Rome. He told the Romans, "The chiefs of Carthage are weary of the war, and are in great want of supplies. Peace (130, *d*) will be acceptable to them. Attack them zealously. In this way they will be conquered." His friends told him, "We will attack the enemy (147). But why (117, N. 1) give yourself[1] to them?" He told them, "This advice of yours is not good. I am a captive and the ambassador of the chiefs of Carthage. I will give myself[2] (up) to them, for (141, N. 3) a man of the greatest manliness will not be false[3] even[4] to (his) enemies."

He went back[5] to the city (153) Carthage, and was killed (141, N. 6) by the chiefs of Carthage.

[1] tē. [2] mē. [3] falsus, -a, -um. [4] etiam. [5] iterum.

MĀRCUS ATĪLIUS RĒGULUS.

LESSON XXVI.

THIRD DECLENSION.

153. STEMS IN **i**.—*Continued.*

	mōns, m., *mountain.*	**urbs**, f., *city.*	**nox**, f., *night.*
	Stem **monti-**	**urbi-**	**nocti-** (cp. 2, 3)
		SINGULAR.	
NOM.	mōns	urbs	nox
GEN.	mont**is**	urb**is**	noct**is**
DAT.	mont**ī**	urb**ī**	noct**ī**
ACC.	mont**em**	urb**em**	noct**em**
ABL.	mont**e**	urb**e**	noct**e**
VOC.	(mōns)	(urbs)	(nox)
		PLURAL.	
NOM.	mont**ēs**	urb**ēs**	noct**ēs**
GEN.	mont**ium**	urb**ium**	noct**ium**
DAT.	mont**ibus**	urb**ibus**	noct**ibus**
ACC.	mont**īs**, **-ēs**	urb**īs**, **-ēs**	noct**īs**, **-ēs**
ABL.	mont**ibus**	urb**ibus**	noct**ibus**
VOC.	(mont**ēs**)	(urb**ēs**)	(noct**ēs**)

a. Decline **cliēns, clientis,** m., *a dependent;* **arx, arcis,** f., *a citadel.*

b. Decline together **parva urbs,** *small city;* **animal** (470) **māgnum,** *large animal;* **nigra nūbēs** (470), *black cloud;* **haec arx,** *this citadel;* **illud mare,** *that sea.*

154. To i-stems belong:

Nouns in -is and **-ēs** which have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative, as **rūpēs, cīvis.**

Neuters in -e, -al, -ar, as **mare, animal.**

I-stems.

Most **nouns in -ns** and **-rs,** as **cliēns, cohors.**

Many **monosyllables** in **s** or **x** following a consonant, as **mōns, arx.**

155. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE.

Urbem oppūgnāre temptāvit, *He tried to attack the city.*

a. In this sentence the **infinitive** is used as in English. This construction has been freely used in preceding exercises.

Complementary Infinitive.

The infinitive used thus (as complement), to complete the meaning of a verb, is called the **Complementary Infinitive.**

b. Its position is **immediately before** the verb. The pupil should train himself to group an infinitive which immediately precedes a finite verb with the verb, treating the two as nearly as possible as though they were a single word.

156. ALLIED WORDS.

Magnate	Pedestrian	Prince	Viaduct
Pedal	Pugnacity	Sylvan	Captivity

157. PROELIUM CUM HELVĒTIĪS.—I.

Helvētii, barbarī hominēs Galliae, terram Aeduōrum occupāre temptāvērunt. **Quoniam** haec terra est prope illam partem Galliae quae Prōvincia appellābātur, Caesar quī Prōvinciae erat princeps cum Helvētiis pūgnāvit.

Diū Caesar eōs nōn oppūgnāvit, tamen alterum **agmen** ab alterō numquam longē ab-erat. Tandem ā Bibracte, māgnō oppidō Aeduōrum, nōn longē **agmina** ā-fuērunt.

Ad eum locum Caesar cum **legiōnibus** properāvit, nam ibi cōpia frūmentī erat. Id prīncipibus Helvētiōrum nūntiātum est. Dīxērunt, "Fuga nōnne est? In **agmen legiōnum** ēius properābimus. Facilis victōria mīlitibus nostrīs erit." Ad novissimum **agmen** Caesaris properāvērunt multōsque vulnerābant. Paucī interfectī sunt. Cōpiās Caesar in proximō **colle** conlocāvit. In hōc locō **legiōnēs** IV, sed in summō **colle** II novās **legiōnēs** atque omnia auxilia impedimentaque conlocāvit.

Helvētii **legiōnēs** quae in **colle** erant celeriter oppūgnāvērunt. Rōmānī ē locō superiōre tēlīs Helvētiōs perturbāvērunt; deinde gladiīs mīlitēs **legiōnum** eōs oppūgnāvērunt. Tandem dēfessī Helvētii ad altum **collem** quī nōn longē ab-erat sē recēpērunt. Ad hunc **collem** mīlitēs Caesaris properābant.

158. WORD-LIST.

legiō, legiōnis, f., *a division of the Roman army, containing from 3000 to 6000 men.*

agmen, agminis, n., *army on the march, a marching column.*

collis, collis, m., *hill.*—**summus collis,** *top of a hill.*

quoniam, adv., *because.*

159. (See 129, 133, 140, and 145.)

The Helvetians were a people who were eager for war, and very brave. Their land was not acceptable to them, because there were many high mountains in it. They attacked the peoples of Gaul and tried to seize their land. But the Haedui were friends of the Roman people, and told Caesar by messenger, "If (146, N. 3) you do not give (us) help we will be overcome by the Helvetians." Because of this[1] which the Haedui had told him Caesar with (his) legions gave help to the Gauls who were attacked by the Helvetians.

[1] 137.

LESSON XXVII.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

160. **ācer**, *eager, keen.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācris, -ēs	ācris, ēs	ācria
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
VOC.	(ācer)	(ācris)	(ācre)	(ācrēs)	(ācrēs)	(ācria)

Like **ācer** decline **celer, celeris, celere,** *swift.*

161.

1. A CLAUSE is any part of a sentence containing a **subject,** a **verb,** and usually an **object.**

Sometimes one or more of these are not expressed if they can be easily supplied.

2. The MAIN CLAUSE or clauses of a sentence are those which, if used alone, would be **grammatically complete** (or make complete sense).

If there are two or more main clauses they are united by such conjunctions as **et, atque, sed, tamen.**

3. The MAIN VERB of a sentence is the verb of its **main clause.** Sometimes there are several main verbs.

Principal and Subordinate Clauses.

4. A SUBORDINATE CLAUSE is a clause in its meaning **modifying some other clause** in the same sentence.

Such clauses are **introduced** by relative pronouns (who, which, etc.), or by subordinate particles (when, since, etc.).

a. These definitions are not without exceptions, but will probably be found exact enough for all practical purposes.

b. The Latin usually has **only one main clause** in each sentence. English usage is very different from the Latin in this respect.

c. In the following example the main clause is printed in small capitals: SED INTER HUNC COLLEM ad quem legiōnēs properābant ATQUE LOCUM in quō prīmum pūgnāverant ERANT MULTĪ BŌĪĪ ET TULINGĪ, MĪLITĒS quī in novissimō agmine hostis fuerant.

162. ORDER OF WORDS.

1. Frequently modifying words or phrases come **before** the word modified. This is the opposite of the English order, except with adjectives: **Summae virtūtis homō**, *A man of the greatest courage.* **Prope flūmen Metaurum ā Rōmānīs interfectus est,** *He was killed near the river Metaurus by the Romans.*

Order of Words.

2. The **emphatic** or important **words** come **toward the first.**

3. The **verb,** excepting **sum,** comes at the **end** of its clause. Exceptions to this rule are very rare.

163. ALLIED WORDS.

Devious	Equine	Homicide	Magnitude
Equestrian	Flume	Liberality	Multiplicand

164. PROELIUM CUM HELVĒTIĪS.—II.

Sed inter hunc collem ad quem legiōnēs **properābant** atque locum in quō prīmum pūgnāverant, erant multī Bōii et Tulingī, mīlitēs quī in novissimō agmine **hostis** fuerant. Hī summō studiō legiōnēs oppūgnāvērunt. Tum **reliquī hostēs,** quī in altō colle erant, rūrsus cum Rōmānīs pūgnāre **properāvērunt.** Cum hīs duae partēs legiōnum, cum illīs tertia pars pugnāvit. In hōc locō diū **hostis** pūgnābat.

Tandem multi Helvētiī rūrsus in collem, **reliquī** ad impedīmenta, sē recēpērunt. Hōc proelium ab horā septimā ad **noctem** pūgnātum **est.** Ad multam **noctem** ad impedīmenta pūgnābant. Tandem **castra hostis** ā legiōnibus capta sunt.

Reliquī Helvētiī in fugā ex-īvērunt. Agmen eōrum in Lingonum terram **properāvit.** Propter Caesaris nūntiōs frūmentum eis Lingonēs nōn dabant. Frūmentī inopiā lēgātī ex **hostibus** ad Caesarem īvērunt; **obsidēs** armaque eī dedērunt.

Sed postquam **obsidēs** datī erant, multī ē castrīs ex-īvērunt atque ad Rhēnum flūmen **properāvērunt.** Celeriter hī captī sunt. **Reliquī** Helvētiī et Tulingī in terram suam rūrsus īvērunt, postquam māgnum numerum **obsidum** dedērant. Hōrum **obsidum** multī fīliī prīncipum erant. Aeduī **reliquīs** Bōiīs agrōs dedērunt.

165. WORD-LIST.

nox, noctis, f., *night.*
hostis, hostis, m. and f., *enemy.*
obses, obsidis, m. and f., *hostage, a person held as a pledge for the performance of a treaty.*
reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining, the rest of.*
properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to hasten, hurry.*

166.

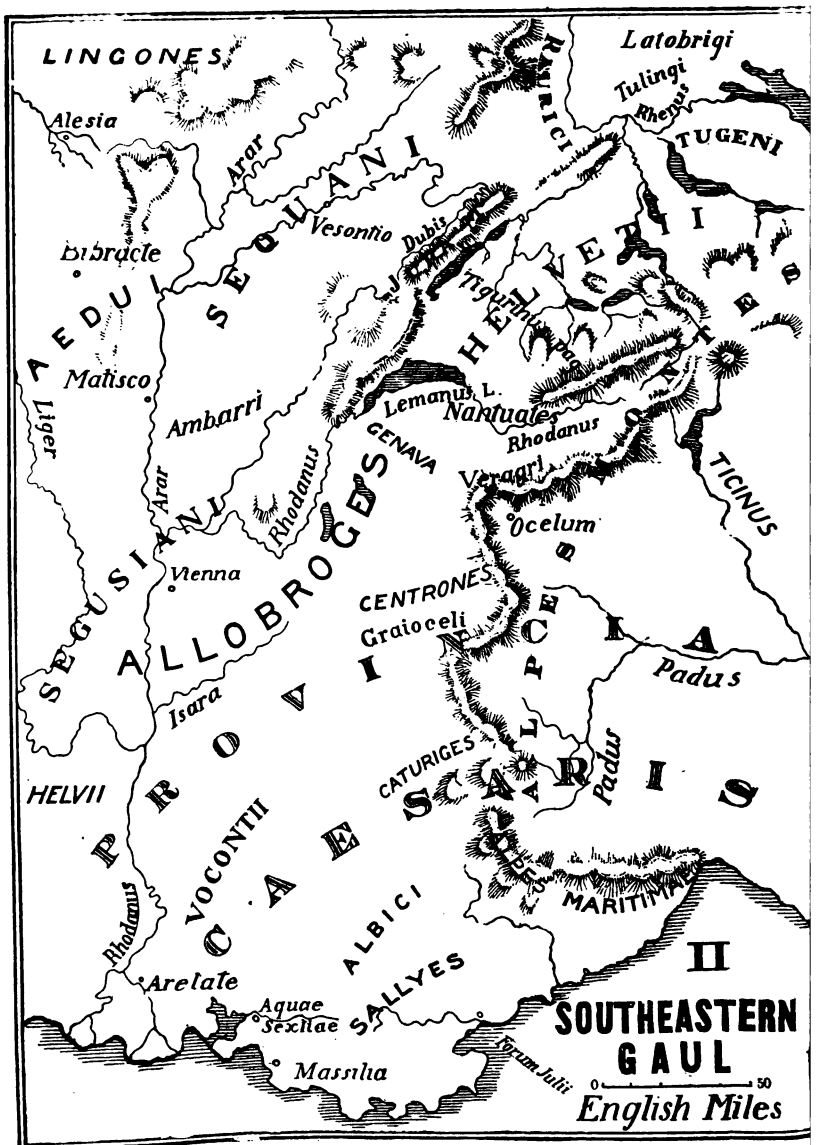
CAESAR'S FIRST FIGHT WITH THE HELVETIANS.

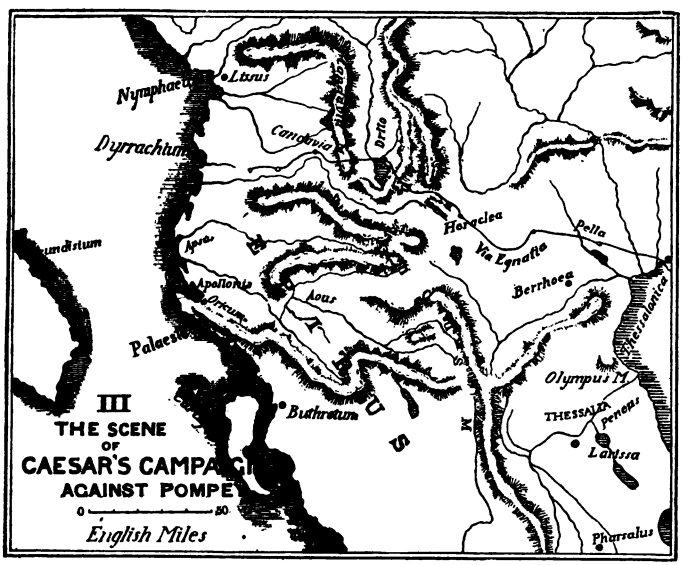
The river Arar flows[1] through[2] the lands of the Haedui and Sequani. It is told Caesar, "Three[3] parts of the forces of the Helvetians have crossed[4] the river." He hastens from the camp with three legions to that portion of their forces which has not crossed the river. He attacks this part, to which the rest of the Helvetians, because they have crossed the river, give no help.

Thus a great number of the Helvetians are overcome by the Roman soldiers.

[1] **īnfluit.** [2] **per.** [3] **trēs.** [4] **trāns-īvērunt.**

THE ROMAN DOMINIONS
44 B C.
.....Boundary of these Dominions
A Enlarged in Map II
B Enlarged in Map III
C Enlarged in Map IV
OCEANUS GERMANICUS
BRITANNIA
GERMANIA
Danubius
Rhenus
Liger
Sequana
Matrona
Arar
Jura M.
Hercynia Silva
Carpates M.
Alpes
Pyrenaei
Corsica
Sardinia
Baleares
HISPANIA
Tagus
Carthago Nova
Carthago
Sicilia
Actium
Macedonia
Thracia
Troja
Athenae
Creta
Cyprus
Halys
Trapezus
Ancyra
Taurus M.
Cilicia
Euphrates
ARMENIA
Caspium Mare
Ecbatana
MEDIA
Tyrus
Palmyra
Damascus
Babylon
Hierosolyma
Cyrene
Memphis
AEGYPTUS
Ammonium
Syrtis minor
Syrtis major
Atlas M.
MAURITANIA
PONTUS EUXINUS
PERSIS
Persepolis
OCEANUS


LINGONES
Alesia
Arar
SEQUANI
Vesontio
Dubis
RAURICI
Latobrigi
Tulingi
Rhenus
TUGENI
Bibracte
AEDUI
Matisco
Liger
Ambarri
Lemanus L.
Nantuates
Rhodanus
GENAVA
HELVETII
Veragri
Ocelum
TICINUS
Arar
Rhodanus
SEGUSIANI
ALLOBROGES
Vienna
CENTRONES
Graioceli
ALPES
Padus
Isara
PROVINCIA
CATURIGES
Padus
HELVII
CAESARIS
VOCONTII
ALBICI
MARITIMAE
Rhodanus
Arelate
SALLYES
Aquae Sextiae
Massilia
Forum Julii
II
SOUTHEASTERN GAUL
0
50
English Miles


Nymphaeum
Ltsrus
Dyrrachium
Candavia
Drilo
Heraclea
Pella
Via Egnatia
Berrhoea
Thessalonica
Apsus
Apollonia
Aous
Palaeste
Olympus M.
Buthrotum
THESSALIA
Peneus
Larissa
Pharsalus
III
THE SCENE
OF
CAESAR'S CAMPA
AGAINST POMPE
0 50
English Miles

LESSON XXVIII.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.—CONTINUED

167. **facilis,** *easy.* Stem **facili-.**

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
NOM.	facil**is**	facile	facil**ēs**	facil**ia**
GEN.	facil**is**	facil**is**	facil**ium**	facil**ium**
DAT.	facil**ī**	facil**ī**	facil**ibus**	facil**ibus**
ACC.	facil**em**	facile	facil**īs, -ēs**	facil**ia**
ABL.	facil**ī**	facil**ī**	facil**ibus**	facil**ibus**
VOC.	(facil**is**	facile)	(facil**ēs**	facil**ia**)

levis, *light, nimble.* Stem **levi-.**

NOM.	lev**is**	leve	lev**ēs**	lev**ia**
GEN.	lev**is**	lev**is**	lev**ium**	lev**ium**
DAT.	lev**ī**	lev**ī**	lev**ibus**	lev**ibus**
ACC.	lev**em**	leve	lev**īs, -ēs**	lev**ia**
ABL.	lev**ī**	lev**ī**	lev**ibus**	lev**ibus**
VOC.	(lev**is**	leve)	(lev**ēs**	lev**ia**)

vēlōx, *swift.*

NOM.	vēlōx	vēlōx	vēlōc**ēs**	vēlōc**ia**
GEN.	vēlōc**is**	vēlōc**is**	vēlōc**ium**	vēlōc**ium**
DAT.	vēlōc**ī**	vēlōc**ī**	vēlōc**ibus**	vēlōc**ibus**
ACC.	vēlōc**ēm**	vēlōx	vēlōc**īs, -ēs**	vēlōc**ia**
ABL.	vēlōc**ī, -e**	vēlōc**ī, -e**	vēlōc**ibus**	vēlōc**ibus**
VOC.	(vēlōx	vēlōx)	(vēlōc**ēs**	vēlōc**ia**)

sapiēns, *wise.*

NOM.	sapiēns	sapiēns	sapientēs	sapientia
GEN.	sapientīs	sapientīs	sapientium	sapientium
DAT.	sapientī	sapientī	sapientibus	sapientibus
ACC.	sapientem	sapiēns	sapientīs, -ēs	sapientia
ABL.	sapientī, -e	sapientī, -e	sapientibus	sapientibus
VOC.	(sapiēns	sapiēns)	(sapientēs	sapientia)

a. Adjectives declined like **acer** (160) are called adjectives of three terminations; those declined like **facilis** or **levis**, adjectives of two terminations; those declined like **vēlōx** and **sapiēns**, adjectives of one termination.

b. Notice that adjectives of three terminations (like **ācer**) and of two terminations (like **facilis**) have **only -ī in the ablative singular.**

168. ALLIED WORDS.

Equinox	Omnibus	Reliquary
Hostile	Partial	Renovation
Littoral	Popularity	Virtuous

169. Learn to unite

Hints for Reading.

A **genitive** with the **nearest** noun or pronoun.

A **preposition** with its noun. The noun **follows** the preposition.

Adjectives with words in the **same cases.**

An **infinitive** which immediately **precedes** a verb with the verb.

a. Words composing such groups are united by **hyphens** (-) in portions of this lesson, and of some following lessons, as an aid to the pupil in learning to group the words.

170.

CAESAR ATQUE CLASSIS POMPĒĪ.

INTRODUCTION.

Caesar first made his reputation as a general after

he had gone from Rome to govern the province of Gaul. Rome was then ruled by a senate whose members came almost entirely from a few families of rank. When Caesar became governor he ruled little more than a strip of land along the Mediterranean and the valley of the Po, or Padus, in modern Italy. In six years he had conquered all of Gaul, the land now called France. His "Gallic Wars" (the "Caesar" studied in schools) describes these campaigns. By an almost endless number of battles and marches he drilled and perfected an army probably finer than any the world had thus far seen.

The senate at Rome at that time ruled almost all of the nations whom the Romans considered civilized. The senators knew that Caesar was ambitious to destroy their power and rule in their place. Cicero, some of whose orations are usually studied after "Caesar," was one of their leaders. Now that Gaul had been conquered they feared that Caesar would attack them.

They turned to Pompey, or Pompeius, who was considered the greatest general of the time, refused to grant what Caesar wished, and began to enroll soldiers throughout Italy. But Caesar, entering Italy, burst upon them so suddenly that the recruits had scarcely time to gather before they were compelled to surrender to his advancing army. Pompey and his friends went to Brundisium, and thence sailed to Greece.

Here they were unmolested for a whole year, for Caesar had no fleet and thought it the best course first to invade Spain and subdue an army which opposed him there. When at last he returned to fight with Pompey his first difficulty was to transport his army by sea from Brundisium to Epirus in the face of Pompey's fleet. The risks he took in doing this are told in the following account, adapted from his "Civil Wars."

I.

Pompēius, quoniam annī - spatium sine - bellō - atque - hoste eī fuerat, māgnās - cōpiās **parāverat.** Ex - **omnibus - regiōnibus** ad - **lītora** māgnam - **classem parāverat.** Māgna - pecūnia eī ab - Asiā,[1] - Syriā, - rēgibusque - **omnibus,** - et - līberīs - Graeciae - populīs data - est; māgnam hominēs - eārum - **omnium - regiōnum,** quārum ipse prīnceps erat, eī dederant. Legiōnēs eī erant cīvium - Rōmānōrum VIIII, ūna ex - Ciliciā veterāna, ūna ex - Crētā - et - Macedoniā ex - veterānīs - mīlitibus, quī in - hīs - **regiōnibus** agrōs - atque - pecūniam habēbant; II ex - Asiā. Cum - Scipiōne ex - Syriā legiōnēs III properāre - **parābant.** Sagittāriōs ex Syriā reliquīsque **regiōnibus** III mīlia habuit, equitumque VII mīlia. Ex quibus ad numerum D prīnceps ex Thraciā dederat; ex Macedoniā CC erant, quōrum prīnceps summā virtūte fuit; D ex Alexandriā, Gallōs Germānōsque, quī ibi ad rēgem fuerant, Pompēī fīlius **classe** portāverat. Frūmentī cōpiam māgnam ex Asiā, Crētā, reliquīsque **regiōnibus parāverat,** quae **classe** ad **lītus** Ēpīrī portābātur.

Pompēius cum suīs legiōnibus ad Ēpīrum vēnit. **Lītus** hūius **regiōnis** est contrā Ītaliam, ubi Caesaris cōpiae conlocātae sunt. **Classem,** quae in **omnibus lītoribus parāta erat,** ad **lītora** Ēpīrī conlocāvit. Prīnceps **omnis** hūius **classis** erat Bibulus.

171. WORD-LIST.

classis, classis, f., *fleet.*
regiō, regiōnis, f., *direction, region.*
omnis, omne, *all.*
lītus, lītoris, n., *coast.*
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to prepare.*

172. POMPEY.

Cnaeus Pompeius had fought in many lands. In Italy (when) a young man (i.e. of few years) he had

[1] See Map I for the places mentioned in this paragraph.

given help to Sulla, a great Roman general,[1] against[2] the legions which he was attacking. Many men were killed (141, n. 6) by Sulla, who gave their lands to his soldiers. But he was the friend of Pompey. "You are," he had told him, "Pompeius the Great." In Africa Pompey defeated the enemies of Sulla. In Spain he fought with Sertorius successfully (in successful[3] battles), a chief of great skill and daring. In Italy five thousand slaves,[4] who had been fighting with the Romans and were hastening into Gaul, were overcome by him. Because of all these successful wars he was loved by the Roman people.

[1] **imperātor.** [2] **contrā.** [3] **secundus, -a, -um.** [4] **servus.**

CNAEUS POMPĒIUS MĀGNUS.

LESSON XXIX.

THE ABLATIVE OF TIME.

173. EXAMPLES.

Prīmā lūce ad castra properāvērunt, *At daybreak they hastened to the camp.*

Nocte in fugā ex-īvērunt, *They departed in flight by night.*

Hīs decem annīs multās terrās oppūgnāvit, *Within these ten years he has attacked many lands.*

Notice that the **ablatives** in these sentences answer the question **when?** or, **within what time?** Ablative of Time.

174. RULE.—**Time when,** or **within which,** is expressed by the **ablative.**

175. ALLIED WORDS.

Agrarian	Militate	Numerical
Impugn	Navy	Principality
Inter	Nocturnal	Reconciliation
	Virile	

176. CAESAR ATQUE CLASSIS POMPĒĪ.—II.

Caesar ex - urbe ad - oppidum - Brundisium hōc - tempore vēnit. Ad - hunc - locum legiōnēs - XII, equitēsque - omnēs īvērunt. Māgna eī fuit **nāvium** - inopia, tamen mīlitibus ita dīxit; "Quoniam estis prope - fīnem - labōrum - atque - perīculōrum, in - Ītaliā impedīmenta conlocāte, omnia ex - victōriā sperāte, atque cum - Pompēiō fortiter pugnāre - parāte." Hieme, cum - VII - legiōnibus,

nāvēs solvit, quārum longae - **nāvēs** XII erant. Brevī - tempore ad - lītus - Ēpīrī vēnit, atque ad - eum - locum, quī Palaeste appellābātur, ex - omnibus - **nāvibus** mīlitēs ex-ivērunt.

Id prīncipibus Pompēī classis nūntiātum est. Māgna erat Bibulī classis, nam prope Palaestem **nāvēs** CXXVIII conlocātae erant. Ācer erat Bibulus, sed Caesaris cōnsiliō superātus erat. Celeriter **nāvēs** solvit, atque Caesaris XXX **nāvēs,** quae rūrsus ad oppidum Brundisium properāre temptābant, omnes incendit, atque hōc īgnī quī in **nāvibus** erant interfectī sunt. Tum omne lītus classibus hieme occupāvit.

177 WORD-LIST.

nāvis, nāvis, f., *ship.*

178. POMPEY.—*Continued.*

The men of Cilicia with their fleets attacked the ships of the Romans along[1] all parts of the coast. At that time grain was brought to Italy by ship from Africa and Sicily. Because of these fleets there was a great lack of grain in Rome. The Roman people gave five hundred ships to Pompey. With this fleet he attacked the enemy, who had a great number of ships. But because they had not stationed all of these ships in one (125) place, many of them in a short time were killed. The rest retreated[2] to Cilicia and Crete. Pompey attacked their towns in Cilicia, which were given (up) to him.

[1] **in.** [2] **sē recēpērunt**

LESSON XXX.

SECOND CONJUGATION. Ē-VERBS.

Moneō (stem **monē-**) *advise.*

Principal parts, **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus.**

179. Learn the present, imperfect and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **moneō** (481).

a. Compare the forms of **moneō** with those of **amō.** How do they differ?

b. Why is it a help in inflecting **moneō** to remember that its stem ends in **ē**?

180. 1. Monent, monēbant, monēbunt. 2. Monētur, monēbātur, monēbitur. 3. Monet, monēbat, monēbit. 4. Monentur, monēmur, monēmini. 5. Moneor, monēmus, monēbimus. 6. Monēbuntur, monē, monēre. 7. Monēbimur, monēbantur, monērī. 8. Monēbō, monēbāmur, monēte. 9. Monēbam, monēbar, monēbāmus. 10. Monēbor, moneō.

181. Like **moneō** inflect in both voices **habeō, have; teneō,** hold; **prohibeō,** keep away.

182. ALLIED WORDS.

Annual	Gladiator	Legacy
Class	Habit	Tribunal
Counselor	Itinerary	Urban

183. CAESAR ATQUE CLASSIS POMPĒI.—III.

Eō tempore in Candaviā Pompēius erat, **iter**que ē Macedoniā ad **urbēs** Apollōniam Dyrrhachiumque **habēbat**. Quoniam ā Caesare lītus occupābātur māgnīs **itineribus** ad **urbem** Apollōniam properāvit. Sed ille, postquam cum mīlitibus ē nāvibus ex-ivit, ad oppidum Oricum celeriter **iter habēbat**, cūius oppidī Graecī sē atque oppidum eī in dēditiōnem dedērunt. Celeriter ad **urbem** Apollōniam **iter habēbat**. Id Staberiō, quī ibi lēgātus Pompēī erat, nūntiābātur. Aquam in arcem portāvit atque obsidēs ē populō **urbis** petīvit. Sed quoniam ii eī nōn datī sunt, fūgit ex **urbe** Staberius. Ad Caesarem lēgātī ex hāc **urbe** et ē regiōnibus fīnitimīs vēnērunt atque omnia in dēditiōnem eī dedērunt. Tum Caesar ad **urbem** Dyrrhachium properāre temptāvit.

Sed Pompēius ā - nūntiīs monēbātur, atque ad - **urbem** - Dyrrhachium etiam nocte māgnīs - **itineribus** properāvit. Caesare mīlitēs - ēius perterrēbantur, multīque quī hominēs - Ēpirī erant ē - signīs ex-ivērunt. Sed prope - Dyrrhachium Labiēnus vēnit et Pompēiō iūrāvit, "Fīdus per - omnia erō." Hōc idem reliquī - lēgātī - tribūnīque - mīlitum atque omnēs - mīlitēs iūrāvērunt.

Ad - **urbem** prīmus Pompēius vēnit, atque ita ab - hāc - **urbe** cum - regiōnibus - fīnitimīs Caesarem prohibēbat.

184. WORD-LIST.

iter, itineris, n., *a road, a march, journey.*
urbs, urbis, f., *city.*
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, *to have.*

185. LABIENUS.

Labienus was a man of great bravery and skill in war. (As) lieutenant of Caesar he had fought against (172, n. 2) the Helvetians. In a battle with the Nervii he with two legions attacked and seized the camp of the enemy, and then quickly (134, n. 2) gave help

to Caesar, who was with two legions whose soldiers had become terrified and were almost[1] overcome.

In many battles he was faithful to Caesar, but after the latter had conquered the Gauls, because he attacked Pompey, Labienus fought against him in four great battles, and was killed[3] in the battle which was fought at the town Munda, in the country (of) Spain.

[1] **paene.** [2] **postquam.** [3] **141, N. 6.**

The four battles mentioned in 185 are as follows:

At *Dyrrhachium* Caesar tried to shut Pompey in by earthworks. Pompey finally entered Caesar's lines by landing troops at a point where no entrenchments faced the sea, and drove back a counter-attack. Caesar then marched rapidly into Thessaly. Here, at *Pharsalia*, Pompey confidently attacked, but was overthrown, and soon after assassinated (48 B.C.). Caesar's opponents then gathered in Africa, but were routed at *Thapsus*. Some leaders fled to Spain, where the exactions of Caesar's officers and the fear that Caesar would revoke favors due to Pompey aided them in gathering a large army, led by the sons of Pompey, Cnaeus and Sextus. After *Munda* (45 B.C.), Cnaeus, wounded and carried on a litter, fled to the mountains, but was betrayed and killed. Sextus remained among the Pyrenees until Caesar's death. A son of Labienus fled to the east, and was honored by the Great King of the Parthians, who ruled over the kings of Mesopotamia and Persia. This Labienus issued coins as a Parthian official, some of which are extant. He attacked Syria after Caesar's death, but was checked by Antony's lieutenants.

QUĪNTUS LABIĒNUS PARTHICUS.

LESSON XXXI.

186. SECOND CONJUGATION.—CONTINUED.

Learn the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect indicative, active and passive, of **moneō.** (481.)

187.

1. Monuī, monitus sum. 2. Monuit, monuerat, monuerit 3. Monitus erit, monuerint. 4. Monueram, monueris, monuērunt. 5. Monuistī, monuerās, monuisse. 6. Monitus eram, monitus est, monitum esse. 7. Monita erat, monita es.

188.

a. Compare the forms **amābās, portābāmus, nūntiābat, tenēbam, monēbant.** To what tense do they belong, and to what conjugations? If we remove the personal endings (76), **amābā-, portābā-, nūntiāba-, tenēba-, monēba-** are left. Notice **ba**, found in them all. What does **ba** mean? It is called the **tense sign** of the **imperfect** tense. Why is it given this name? Tense Signs.

b. Has the future tense any tense sign?

189. ALLIED WORDS.

Announce	Frumentary	Itinerate	Prohibition	Temporal
Date	Habitual	Nave	Tenable	Urbane

190. CAESAR ET CLASSIS POMPĒĪ.—IV.

In order that the pupil may acquire the habit of noting the endings, they are printed in heavy-faced type in parts of this and the following lesson.

Caesar sua castra ad flūmen Apsum conlocāvit, et ibi reliquās ex Italiā legiōnēs exspectābat. Pompēius in castrīs trans flūmen Apsum suās cōpiās omnēs auxiliaque tenēbat, sed frūmentum Caesaris prohibēre temptābat.

Interim Calēnus lēgātus quī cum reliquīs legiōnibus equitibusque in urbe Brundisiō erat nāvēs quās habēbat solvit. Bonā fortūnā brevī tempore nāvīs quae nūntiōs ex Caesare portābat ad eum vēnit. Nūntiī monēbant, "Omnia lītora classibus Pompēī tenentur." Sē in urbem omnibus cum suīs nāvibus recēpit. Ūna ex hīs nāvibus, in quā nūllī mīlitēs erant, nōn sē recēpit atque ā Bibulō capta est. Omnēs in eā ad ūnum interfectī sunt.

Lēgātus Pompēī, Libō, ab oppidō Oricō ex-īvit cum classe cūius prīnceps erat, C nāvium, ad urbem Brundisium insulamque, quae contrā urbem est, occupāvit. Nōn māgnum numerum nāvium incendit, et multōs mīlitēs Calēnī perterrēbat. Nocte ēius mīlitēs atque sagittāriī in terram ē classe ex-īvērunt, et Calēnī equitēs perterrēbant. Pompēiō per nūntiōs nūntiāvit, "Ipse meā classe auxilia Caesaris prohibēbō." Ab urbe ā legiōnibus Calēnī cōpiae prohibēbantur, tamen īnsulam tenēbant, sed ex aquā prohibēbantur equitibus quōs Antōnius, lēgātus summā virtūte, quī eō tempore in urbe erat, per lītus conlocāverat. Inopiae causā aquae Libō ab insulā brevī tempore ex-īvit.

Tamen multum - tempus erat et hiems iam ad-fuerat, neque ab - urbe - Brundisiō nāvēs - legiōnēsque vēnērunt ad - Caesarem, quī suās - cōpiās in - castrīs tenēbat. Calēnus nōn suās - nāvēs solvit quoniam numerō - nāvium Bibulus superābat, atque omnia - lītora māgnō - studiō - cōnsiliōque tenēbat. Ita auxilium ā - Caesare prohibēre temptābat.

191. WORD-LIST.

ex (before a consonant, usually **ē**), Preposition followed by Ablative, *from.*

tempus, temporis, n., *time.*

suus, sua, suum, *his, their.*

[OVER]

prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus, *to keep away.* Often with **ex.**

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus *to hold, keep.*

a. **Suus, sua, suum** frequently refers to the subject of the sentence.

b. For "his" or "their," when the reference is not to the subject, "**ēius,**" "**eōrum,**" "**illīus,**" "**illōrum,**" or the genitive of some similar pronoun is used.

For instance: *The Gauls attacked the troops of the legate, but their horsemen were easily compelled by his soldiers to retire* Gallī cōpiās lēgātī oppūgnāvērunt, sed **suī** equitēs facile ā **ēius** mīlitibus sē recipere coāctī sunt.

Note that **suī** agrees with **equitēs** in gender, number and case, precisely as an adjective would.

192.

The island opposite the town Brundisium was seized by Libo, a lieutenant of Pompey, with his fleet of a hundred ships. Calenus, Caesar's lieutenant, had at this time five legions in the city, and kept Libo away from it; still his soldiers were terrified.

There was no water upon the island, and for this reason the soldiers of Libo attempted to carry water from the (main)land to the island. But Antony, a lieutenant and good friend of Caesar, stationed horsemen along the coast, who kept them from (securing) water. Because of this Libo soon went away from the island.

LESSON XXXII.

THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

193. EXAMPLES.

Gallī Rōmānōs cōnsiliō nōn superābant, *The Gauls did not surpass the Romans in skill.*

Haec terra illī flūminum numerō est similis, *This country is like that one in the number of its rivers.*

Galba nōmine tantum prīnceps fuīt, *Galba was leader only in name.*

Cōnsiliō limits **superābant** in meaning. In the same way **numerō** and **nōmine** limit **similis** and **prīnceps.** The ablative thus used is called the **Ablative of Specification,** because it **specifies in what respect** a statement is true.

Ablative of Specification.

194.

RULE.—The **Ablative of Specification** is used to point out **in what respect a statement is true.**

195. ALLIED WORDS.

Affiliation	Equinoctial	Insuperable	Multiply	Sum
Armament	Grateful	Liberation	Numerous	Unfortunate

196. CAESAR ATQUE CLASSIS POMPĒĪ.—V.

Tandem Caesar suōs principēs quī erant ad oppidum Brundisium monuit, "Primō tempore secundō ad lītora Ēpirī properāte." Brevī tempore Auster flābat atque nāvēs solvērunt. Postquam ex terrā Ēpirō vidēbantur, Coponius, classis princeps quae erat ad urbem Dyrrachium, eās

oppūgnāre temptāvit. Sed māgnā fortūnā Auster increbuit; ita Calēnī nāvēs onerāriae servābantur. Neque vērō ille ob eam causam sē recēpit, sed labōre nautārum tempestātem superāre temptābat. Calēnus Antōniusque studiō Coponī perterritī sunt; quā causā ad locum quī proximus erat in Ēpirī litore properāvērunt. Hic locus ab Āfricō, sed nōn ab Austrō, erat tūtus. Māgnum tempestāte perīculum eīs fuit, sed Auster māximā fortūnā hōc ipsō tempore in Āfricum sē vertit. Ita ex omnibus perīculīs servātī sunt.

Sed perīculum Coponī classī Āfricō erat māgnum. Nāvēs ēius ad ūnam numerō XVI inter-īvērunt, et ex māgnō numerō nautārum pars tempestāte interfecta est; pars ā militibus Calēnī servāta est.

197.

Calenus, who was at the city Brundisium, at the first opportunity hastened with his fleet to the coast of Epirus. Coponius, the admiral of the fleet of Pompey at the town Dyrrhachium, tried to attack him, but was kept off by the heavy weather. Nevertheless[1] he terrified Calenus, who went to a place upon the coast, Nymphaeum, unprotected from the south wind, which was then blowing. He was for this reason[2] in great peril. But the wind luckily changed to the wind from the west-south-west, from which he was protected, because he was near[3] the shore, where[4] there were hills. Thus he disembarked[5] his troops and set them in camp.

[1] tamen. [2] causa. [3] prope. [4] ubi.
[5] See 176, end of first paragraph.

LESSON XXXIII.

198. FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of this declension ending in **-us** are **masculine**; those ending in **-ū** are **neuter**. (But see 10, 3, 4.)

a. But **domus**, *house*, and **manus**, *hand*, or *band* (*of men*), are **feminine**.

199.

	Cursus, m., *a running, speed.*	**Cornū**, n., *horn, wing* (*of an army*).
	SINGULAR.	
NOM.	Curs**us**	Cornū
GEN.	Curs**ūs**	Cornū**s**
DAT.	Curs**uī**, **-ū**	Cornū
ACC.	Curs**um**	Cornū
ABL.	Cursū	Cornū
VOC.	(Curs**us**)	(Cornū)
	PLURAL.	
NOM.	Curs**ūs**	Corn**ua**
GEN.	Curs**uum**	Corn**uum**
DAT.	Curs**ibus**	Corn**ibus**
ACC.	Curs**ūs**	Corn**ua**
ABL.	Curs**ibus**	Corn**ibus**
VOC.	(Curs**ūs**)	(Corn**ua**)

a. **Domus,** *house,* has also forms of the Second Declension. See 472.

b. Decline together **māgnus exercitus,** *large army;* **sua manus,** *his hand;* **parvum cornū,** *small horn.*

200. ALLIED WORDS.

Habituate	Itinerant	Multiplication	Partiality	Prohibit
Hostility	Locate	Militia	Populate	Suburb

201. CAESAR ATQUE CLASSIS POMPĒĪ.—VI.

Omnēs cōpiās Antōnius in castrīs conlocāvit, quārum erat summa legiōnēs IV, et equitēs DCCC, atque id nūntiīs Caesarī nūntiāvit. Sed Caesari longum flūmine erat iter, atque Pompēius clam et nocte ex castrīs ā flūmine Apsō ad Antōnium māgnīs itineribus contendit. In idōneō locō prope castra Antōnī cōpiās conlocāvit suōsque omnēs in castrīs continuit īgnēsque prohibuit. "Quoniam meōs mīlitēs Antōnius nōn videt iter ad Caesarem habēbit. Eum in itinere oppūgnābō." Ita dīxit. Tamen haec per Graecōs Antōniō nūntiāta sunt. Ille per nūntiōs Caesarem monuit, et in castrīs suās cōpiās tenēbat. Caesar celeriter ad eum vēnit.

Pompēius ex eō locō ex-īvit, omnibusque cōpiīs ad locum Asparīgium vēnit atque ibi idōneō locō castra conlocāvit. Caesar prope castra Pompēī sua castra conlocāvit.

FĪNIS.

202.

Caesar was surpassed in number of soldiers by Pompey, still, because he had legions which had fought in many battles against[1] the Gauls, he was not attacked by the latter, very many of whose legions were new. The friends of Pompey were eager to fight. (119, N. 1.) At length[2] their counsel prevailed, and a battle was fought at the place Pharsalia, in Greece.

[1] **contrā.** [2] **tandem.**

203. WORD-LIST FOR REVIEW.

fortūna	annus	ad
inopia	proelium	ex, ē
		quoniam

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus
properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus
temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus
prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus

reliquus, -a, -um	summus, -a, -um	suus, -a, -um
classis	nox	agmen
collis	obses	flūmen
eques	pars	iter
homō	pēs	lītus
hostis	pedes	tempus
labor	prīnceps	
legiō	regiō	omnis, omne
mīles	urbs	
nāvis	virtūs	

204. Translate these words:

obsidum	hominum	regiōnum
classibus	equitēs	labōris
legiōnēs	itinere	prīncipem
mīlitis	virtūtēs	pede
partī	tempore	peditis
urbem	hostis	agmina
nocte	lītoribus	flūmine

LESSON XXXIV.

THIRD CONJUGATION. E VERBS.

Regō (stem **rege-**), *rule.*

Principal Parts, **regō, regere, rēxī, rectus.**

205. Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present imperative and infinitive, active and passive, of **regō.** (482.)

a. Compare the forms of **regō** with those of **amō** and **moneō.** Wherein are they alike, and wherein do they differ? Concentrate your attention upon the **differences.**

206. 1. Regunt, regēbant, regent. 2. Regis, regēbās, regēs. 3. Regitur, regēbātur, regētur. 4. Regēbantur, regēbāris, regēbāmus. 5. Regeris, regimus, regī. 6. Regit, reguntur, regēris. 7. Reget, regimur, regere. 8. Regēbat, regēmus, regite. 9. Regēmur, regiminī, rege.

207. ALLIED WORDS.

Data	Magnanimous	Tempt
Invulnerable	Multipliable	Tenancy
Liberal	Omniscient	
Locality	Population	

208. Pīsō Aquitānus.

An incident from Caesar's Gallic campaigns.

Nostrōs equitēs, quī nōn parātī erant, Germānōrum equitēs subitō oppūgnāvērunt. Nostrī ad agmen legiōnum fūgērunt.

In eō proeliō cum Germānīs ex equitibus nostrīs interfectī sunt LXXII; in hīs vir summā virtūte, Pīsō Aquitānus, cūius avus in suā terrā rex fuerat et amīcus ab nostrō senātū appellātus erat.

Hic in proeliō frātrī, quī ab hostibus superābātur, auxilium dedit, et eum servāvit; sed ipsīus equus vulnerātus est. Ipse diū fortiter sē dēfendit, sed tandem graviter vulnerātus est et ita interfectus est. Id ēius frāter, quem ille servāverat, procul vīdit: ex equō in hostēs ūnus properāvit atque interfectus est.

209. 1. These men will bravely defend every one who will hasten into their camp.

2. This man's grandfather was king, but he himself will not rule over the people.

3. We shall defend the walls, and you shall bring the weapons.

4. These Germans will hasten on horseback with the messenger to the winter camp, and will defend him if[1] they are attacked.

5. The horsemen of Caesar are Gauls, whom the Germans easily[2] conquer. If the Gauls shall dare[3] to fight with him, he will defend the lands which he has seized by means of these very Germans whom he is now attacking with the aid of the Gauls.

6. If you are ready, attack the men on the wall.

[1] **sī.** [2] **facile.** [3] **audeō.**

LESSON XXXV.

THIRD CONJUGATION—CONTINUED.

210. Learn the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, active and passive, of **regō.** (482.)

a. Compare these forms with the forms of **amō** and **moneō**.

211. 1. Rēxit, rēxerat, rēxerit. 2. Rectus erit, rectae erimus, rectus eram. 3. Recta sum, rectum esse, rēxerint. 4. Rectus est, rectī sumus, rēxerant. 5. Rēxistis, rēxerō, rectae estis. 6. Rēxerimus, rēximus, rectus erō. 7. Rēxī, rēxistī.

212. *a.* Have all the verbs of the first conjugation so far learned, excepting **dō** (**dedī**), principal parts which are alike?

b. Are **teneō** (**tentus**) and its compounds the only verbs of the second conjugation so far learned whose principal parts are unlike those of **moneō?**

c. How many verbs of the third conjugation can you find whose principal parts are like those of **regō?**

213. ALLIED WORDS.

Belligerent	Missile	Suburban
Depart	Navigate	Tenacity
Mediterranean	Nocturn	
Missive	Numeration	

214. A Fight around a Hillock.

Quō annō Pompēius **exercitum** classemque parat Caesar cum **exercitū** in Hispāniā contrā **exercitum** Afrānī, lēgāti Pompēī, bellum **gerit.** Ad urbem Ilerdam proelia **gerunt.** Est inter hanc urbem et proximum collem māgnum, ubi castra Afrānius habet, **parvus** collis. Ex urbe Afrānius frūmentum ad suum exercitum portat.

Caesar dīcit, "Ad hunc **parvum** collem cohortēs **mittam,** itaque ā frūmentō **exercitus** Afrāni prohibēbitur." Legiōnēs III ex castrīs **mittit,** et in idōneīs locīs prope **parvum** collem conlocat, quibus ex locīs antesignāni cursū **parvum** collem occupāre temptant. Sed hōc quae prō castris sunt Afrāni cohortēs vident, et brevī itinere ad **parvum** collem celeriter **mittuntur.** Proelium **geritur,** et quoniam primō in **parvum** collem Afrāni cohortēs contendunt nostrī superantur. Auxilium iīs **mittēbātur,** sed tandem omnēs sē ad sīgna legiōnum recēpērunt. Eā causā legiō quae in eō cornū conlocāta erat locum nōn tenuit atque in proximum collem sē recēpit. Omnēs legiōnēs III perterrēbantur, atque in eās militēs Afrāni ācriter contendēbant. Legiōnem Caesar **mīsit,** quae auxilium dedit. Proelium bene **gessērunt,** nam militēs Afrāni sē ad urbem recēpērunt et sub mūrō proelium **gessērunt.**

215. WORD-LIST.

exercitus, -**ūs,** m., *army.*
parvus, -**a,** -**um,** *small.*
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, *to send.*
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *to be engaged in doing* (*something*), *to do,* or *carry on.*

216. At the time when Pompey was preparing an army in Epirus the chiefs of the Roman armies in Africa and Spain and the people of Massilia, a city in Gaul, were all fighting against Caesar and his generals. Caesar sent Curio with III new legions to

Sicily and Africa, but went[1] himself to Spain, because his forces in that land were opposed to a large and good army.

Curio went to Sicily, and from there carried a part of his army across[2] by fleet to Africa, where[3] he fought with Varus, who was one of Pompey's friends.

[1] **īvit.** [2] Use **trāns-portāre.** [3] **ubi.**

LESSON XXXVI.

217. PŪLLŌ ET VORĒNUS.

Erant in legiōne virī māximā virtūte, centuriōnēs, Titus Pullō et Lūcius Vorēnus, quī contrōversiās continenter dē suā virtūte habēbant. Ex hīs Pullō cum Gallīs, quī hiberna legiōnis occupāre temptābant, ex vallō ācriter pūgnābat. "Quid dubitās, Vorēne?" dixit, "Hōc tempus dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit," et statim extrā vallum ex-īvit. Ad partem ubi hostēs multī sunt vīsī contendit.

Nōn Vorēnus sē in vallō continuit, sed quoque extrā hiberna ex-īvit. Pullō tēlum in hostēs mīsit, atque hominem ex Gallīs interfēcit. In eum omnēs hostēs tēla mīsērunt. Trānsfīxum est scūtum Pullōnī et tēlum in balteō dēfīxum est. Āvertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam, et gladium māgnā difficultāte ē-dūxit. Eum tum hostēs celeriter oppūgnābant, sed Vorēnus vēnit et illī auxilium dedit. Ad hunc sē ā Pullōne omnēs Gallī vertērunt. Gladiō pūgnam bene gessit Vorēnus atque hominem eōrum interfēcit. Sed cum māgnō studiō in reliquōs contendit, atque in locum īnferiōrem concīdit. In eum rūrsus hostēs celeriter contendēbant, sed Pullō eī auxilium dedit.

Postquam ita pūgnāvērant summā cum virtūte sē intrā hiberna recēpērunt.

218. (Use whatever words you think will best express the sense of the following lines, which are taken from Macaulay's "Battle of Lake Regillus." Do not try to translate it word for word.)

But fiercer[1] grew the fighting
Around[2] Valerius dead,
For Titus dragged[3] him by the feet
And Aulus by the head.[4]
"On, Latins,[5] on," quoth Titus;
"See (how) the rebels[6] fly."[7]
"Romans, stand firm," quoth Aulus,
"And win this fight, or[8] die."[9]

[1] Nominative m. and f. **ācrior**, n. **ācrius**. [2] **circum**. [3] **trahere**. [4] **caput**. [5] **Latīnus**, -I. [6] i.e. Romans. [7] *to yield*, **cēdere**. [8] **aut**. [9] Imperative of "*to die*" is **morimini**.

LESSON XXXVII.

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

219. There are three degrees of comparison: the **positive**, the **comparative**, and the **superlative.**

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE. (ending **-ior**)	SUPERLATIVE. (ending **-issimus**)
lātus (lāto-) (43), *wide.*	**lātior**, *wider.*	**lātissimus**, *widest.*
levis (levi-) (167)	**levior, levius**	**levissimus, -a, -um**
vēlōx (vēlōci-) (167)	**vēlōcior, -ius**	**vēlōcissimus, -a, -um**

a. How is the comparative formed from the positive in these examples? How is the superlative formed?

This is the **regular form of comparison** for all adjectives excepting those in **-er.**

220. Adjectives in -er.

līber (lībero-) (474), *free.*	**līberior**, *freer.*	**līberrimus**, *freest.*
ācer (ācri-) (160)	**ācrior, -ius**	**ācerrimus, -a, -um**

a. Notice that **adjectives in -er** have the ending **-rimus** in the **superlative.** Comparing of Adjectives.

221. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.

Paradigm.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
NOM.	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
GEN.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
DAT.	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
ACC.	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs, -īs	altiōra
ABL.	altiōre, -ī	altiōre, -ī	altiōribus	altiōribus
VOC.	(altior	altius)	(altiōres	altiōra)

a. The **comparatives** of all adjectives (except **plus,** 229) are **declined** like **altior.**

b. The **superlatives** are all declined like **bonus** (474).

Compare and decline in the comparative: **longus, grātus, novus, miser, celer,** *swift,* **atrōx,** *cruel.*

222. EXAMPLES.

Mōns est altior quam collis,
Mōns est altior collī, } *A mountain is higher than a hill.* quam.

Observe that in the first sentence, where **quam** is used, **collis** is in the **same case** as **mōns**; but in the second, where **quam** is omitted, the **ablative collī** is used.

RULE.—The **ablative** is used with **comparatives** in the sense of **than** when **quam** is omitted.

223. EXAMPLES.

Mūrus est altior, *The wall is rather (or too) high.*
Mūrus est altissimus, *The wall is very high.*

These sentences illustrate meanings sometimes given to the comparative and superlative.

224.

1. Quis mūrum longiōrem **quam** Rōmae vīdit?
2. Quis longiōrem mūrum **quam** mūrum Rōmae vīdit?
3. Hōstēs in altissimō collī agmine Caesaris perterrēbantur.
4. Quis nigriōrem equum eō habet?
5. Hōc iter ad hīberna Caesaris est brevissimum.
6. Collēs altissimī cum labōre ab ācerrimō hoste tenēbantur.
7. Padus est flūmen longius Arnō.
8. Peditēs quōs dux in altō collī tenuit hostium cōpiās ab eō prohibēbunt.

9. Arma quibus Rōmānī ā mūrō prohibēbantur gladiī longissimī erant.

10. Terra Gallia altiōra flūmina **quam** Ītalia habet.

11. Prohibētur ab urbe reliquīs cīvibus.

12. Nōn facile ab urbibus peditēs hostium prohibēbat.

13. Novissimum agmen hostium in altō colle vīsum erat.

14. Estne hīc equus nigerrimus?

225. SAVING THE STANDARD.

Ibi in silvā Lūcius Cotta lēgātus ā Gallis interfectus est cum māgnā parte mīlitum. Reliquī sē ad hīberna recēpērunt, ex quibus Lūcius Petrosidius, aquilifer, māgnō numerō hostium extrā vallum premēbātur. Aquilam intrā vallum pro-iēcit; ipse māximā virtūte prō hībernīs pūgnābat atque tandem interfectus est.

226. WORD-LIST.

quam, adverb used after an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, *than*.

227. (Translate these sentences in two ways, where possible.)

1. The sword which the hostage gave to the horseman is longer than this one.

2. Who are more uncivilized than the Romans? The Gauls are more uncivilized than they, but most uncivilized of all are the Germans.

3. Diviciacus was the freest of the chiefs of the Haedui, because he had not given his children as hostages to their enemies.

4. The men upon the wall are fewer than those who are in this gate.

5. He placed his camp upon the highest of the hills.

6. Is this road to the camp shorter than that (one)?

7. The deepest river in Italy is the Padus.

8. Galba has a blacker horse than this horse.

LESSON XXXVIII.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES—CONTINUED.

228. The following adjectives form the **comparative** and **superlative irregularly:**

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, -a, -um, *good*	**melior, melius**	**optimus**, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, *bad*	**pēior, peius**	**pessimus**, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um, *large*	**māior, maius**	**māximus**, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, *much* / **multī**, -ae, -a, *many*	**plūs**	**plūrimus**, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um, *small*	**minor, minus**	**minimus**, -a, -um

229.

DECLENSION OF **plus**, *more* (plural *more* or *many*).

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
NOM.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	——	plūs	plūrīs, -ēs	plūra
ABL.	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus
VOC.	——	(plūs)	(plūrēs	plūra)

230. Some adjectives are compared by means of adverbs: **Idōneus,** *suitable.* **Magis idōneus,** *more suitable.* **Māximē idōneus,** *most suitable.*

231. ALLIED WORDS.

Castle	Habitué	Navigable	Pertinent	Subterranean
Collocate	Multifold	Numeral	Primeval	Tenacious

232.

1. Rōmānī hīberna māiora quam Gallī conlocāverant.

2. Certum numerum mīlitum in hībernīs tenuit atque equitēs, quōrum erat māgnus numerus in Galliā, ex hīs regiōnibus **obtinēbat.**

3. Caesar minor nātū erat quam Pompēius.

4. Optimī mīlitēs saepe fuērunt pessimī hominēs, sed Caesar vir melior erat atque ācerrimus prīnceps.

5. Optimōs amāmus atque perterrēmur ā pessimīs.

6. Melius est amārī quam perterrēre, et nōn difficilius.

7. Quis hōrum puerōrum est aegerrimus? Hīc est aegrior illō.

8. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae.

9. Helvētii hāc ex parte **monte** altissimō **continentur.**

10. Hōc in collī peditēs **continēbantur.**

11. Reliquam partem cōpiārum in hōc locō **continet.**

12. Haec silva ab Helvētiōrum regiōne ad terrās Dacōrum **pertinet.**

13. Mārcus est māior nātū et altior Sextō.

14. Mūrī hōrum hībernōrum sunt longiōrēs quam mūrī erant superiōre annō.

233. WORD-LIST.

ob-tineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus, *to possess, obtain.*
con-tineō, etc., *to hold together.* Passive also, *is bounded* (geographical term).
per-tineō, etc., *to extend.*
mōns, montis, m., *mountain.*

234.

1. Because the Helvetians possessed a land which was bounded by very high mountains, which extended in all directions. they tried to seize a new country more suitable to a people who were very brave.

2. The largest city of Italy is Rome.

3. Because his men were fewer than those of the enemy he hastened by very long marches to the mountains and placed a camp in a suitable place upon a rather high hill.

4. Most men have more courage than skill.

LESSON XXXIX.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—CONTINUED.

235. Six adjectives in **-lis** are compared as follows:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facilis, -e, *easy.*	facil**ior**, facil**ius**	facil**limus**, **-a**, **-um**
difficilis, -e, *hard.*	difficil**ior**, difficil**ius**	difficil**limus**, **-a**, **-um**
similis, -e, *like.*	simil**ior**, simil**ius**	simil**limus**, **-a**, **-um**
dissimilis, -e, *unlike.*	dissimil**ior**, dissimil**ius**	dissimil**limus**, **-a**, **-um**
humilis, -e, *low.*	humil**ior**, humil**ius**	humil**limus**, **a**, **-um**
gracilis, -e, *slender.*	gracil**ior**, gracil**ius**	gracil**limus**, **-a**, **-um**

236. The following form their **superlative irregularly:**

exterus,[1] *outward.*	exter**ior**, *outer.*	extrēmus, extimus,	*outermost, last.*
īnferus,[1] *below.*	īnfer**ior**, *lower.*	īnfimus, īmus,	*lowest.*
posterus,[1] *following.*	poster**ior**, *later.*	postrēmus, postumus,	*last.*
superus,[1] *above.*	super**ior**, *higher.*	suprēmus, summus,	*highest.*

[1] Not used in the Nominative Singular Masculine.

237. The following have **no positive,** and form the comparative and superlative from other parts of speech:

citerior, *hither.*	cit**imus,** *hithermost.*
interior, *inner.*	int**imus,** *inmost.*
prior, *former.*	prī**mus,** *first.*
propior, *nearer.*	prox**imus,** *next.*
ulterior, *further.*	ult**imus,** *furthest, last.*

a. Do you remember any prepositions or adverbs from which these might be derived?

238. ALLIED WORDS.

Barbarity	Laborious	Omnipresence
Content	Major (1, *a*)	Summit
Enumerate	Navigation	
External	Obtainable	

239. 1. Hās urbēs in regiōnibus trāns flūmen **prīmās obtinuerat.**

2. **Extrēmum** oppidum Allobrogum est **proximum**que Helvētiōrum terrīs Genāva.

3. Erat in Galliā ulteriōre ūna legiō.

4. **Prīmā** nocte **summus** collis **obtinēbātur.**

5. Complūrēs ex gladiīs quī in mūrīs sunt **obtinēre** temptābat.

6. Belgae **pertinent** ad **īnferiōrem** partem flūminis.

7. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad **montēs** et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam **pertinet.**

8. Galliam citeriōrem **montēs** Alpēs **continuērunt.**

9. Facile est tēla gladiōsque **obtinēre.**

10. Illud iter, quod inter altissimōs **montēs** atque flūmen erat, **obtinuit.**

11. Ex eā urbe silva ad Helvētiōs **pertinuit.**

12. Urbem lītus **continēbat.**

13. Ab hōc locō collis **pertinuit** ad **proximum montem.**

14. Multī puerī māgnīs capitibus nōn sunt **superiōrēs** cōnsiliō.

240. WORD-LIST.

bonus, -a, -um, *good;* **melior, melius,** *better;* **optimus, -a, -um,** *best.*

māgnus, māior, māximus, *large, larger, largest.*

multus, plūs, plūrimus, *much, more, most.*

exterus, exterior, extrēmus or **extimus,** *outward, outer, outermost.*

īnferus, īnferior, īnfimus or **īmus,** *below, lower, lowest.*

posterus, posterior, postrēmus, *following, later, last.*

superus, superior, summus or **suprēmus,** *above, higher, highest*

——— **prior,** *former;* **prīmus,** *first.*

——— **propior,** *nearer;* **proximus,** *nearest, next.*

241.

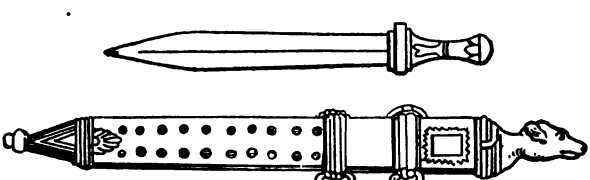
1. Pompey's fleet, whose chief was a man of the greatest courage, was larger than Caesar's. Pompey had more soldiers than Caesar, but the majority of the latter's soldiers were better than even [1] the best soldiers in Pompey's legions.

2. On the following night he placed his baggage upon the top of the hill.

3. The Romans had a more difficult march than they had last year, because the enemy were holding the hills which were next to the shortest [2] of the roads.

4. The last hill held by the enemy was the highest.

[1] **etiam.** [2] **brevis, -e,** *short.*



GLADIĪ RŌMĀNĪ.

LESSON XL.

FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

242. Many Latin adverbs are formed from **adjectives.**

o STEMS (43).

(ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.)

ADJECTIVE.	STEM.	ADVERB.
longus, *long.*	longo-	long**ē**, *far.*
miser, *wretched.*	misero-	miser**ē**, *wretchedly.*

These change the **o** of the stem to **ē.**

i STEMS.

(ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.)

brevis, *short.*	brevi-	brevi**ter**, *briefly.*
ācer, *eager.*	ācri-	ācri**ter**, *eagerly.*
sapiēns, *wise.*	sapienti-	sapien**ter**, *wisely.*

These add **ter** to the stem.

a. But notice that stems in **-nti** (**sapienti-**) drop **ti.**

243. The **accusative** and the **ablative neuter** of the **adjective** are also sometimes used as **adverbs.**

multus, *much.*	multum, *much.*
facilis, *easy.*	facile, *easily.*
prīmus, *first.*	prīmō, *at first.*
subitus, *sudden.*	subitō, *suddenly.*

244. ALLIED WORDS.

Ameliorate	Optimist	Superiority
Extremity	Plurality	Supremacy
Majority	Primitive	
Omniscience	Priority	

245. PŪGNA PHARSALICA.

The battle of Pharsalia was probably the decisive battle in the struggle between Caesar and the Senate (170), although it did not seem so at the time to the enemies of the former, and was not so fiercely contested as the later battles in Africa and Spain. It thus probably ranks as one of the decisive battles of the world. (See also 467.)

246. I.

Pompēius, quī castra in - colle habēbat, ad - īnfimās - partēs - montis legiōnēs conlocābat. "In - hōc - locō **facile** victōriam obtinēbō," dixit. Caesar, quoniam numerō multīs - partibus erat inferior, suōs - militēs continēbat, et in - idōneō - locō legiōnēs conlocābat.

Pompēī - amicīs, lēgātīs - tribūnīsque, māgnum proelī - studium erat, sed id eī nōn grātum erat. Tandem studiō - amicōrum superātus - est, pūgnāreque - parāvit.

Interim Caesar castra movēre - constituit, atque sīgnum dedit, iamque illī quōs prīmōs in - agmine conlocāverat in - portīs - castrōrum erant. Sed eō - ipsō - tempore legiōnēs - Pompēī ab - īnfimīs - montis - partibus in - campum movēbant et pūgnāre - parāre - vidēbantur. Id Caesar vīdit atque oppūgnāre - parāvit.

Pompēius in - sinistrō - cornū legiōnēs - II conlocāverat: in - eō - locō ipse erat. Medium - locum Scīpiō cum - legiōnibus - Syriacīs tenēbat. Ūna - legiō cum - **cohortibus** - Hispānīs in - dextrō - cornū erat - conlocāta. Numerō **cohortēs** CX erant. Hae erant mīlia XLV. Reliquās **cohortēs** VII in castrīs castellīsque conlocāverat. Omnēs equitēs, quī optima arma habēbant, sagittāriī funditōrēsque, in sinistrā parte erant.

Caesar ūnam legiōnem in dextrō cornū conlocāvit. **Cohortēs** LXXX habēbat, quae summa erat mīlia XXII. **Cohortēs** II in castrīs erant. Ipse contrā Pompēium erat.

247. WORD-LIST.

cohors, cohortis, f., *cohort,* the tenth part of a legion.
longē, *far;* **bene,** *well;* **facile,** *easily.*
multum, or **multō,** *much;* **subitō,** *suddenly, unexpectedly.*
celeriter, *quickly.*

248.

The last hill which the enemy were holding was suddenly attacked by the Romans at night. This hill was rather high, and the most of those soldiers who first attacked, because they were in a lower position than the enemy, were wounded by the latter, whose swords were much longer than theirs. But the tribune greatly surpassed the enemy in skill. He easily seized the next [1] hill, which was not far distant [2] and much higher than that which the enemy were holding. Because of this the enemy quickly retreated [3] to a place near their (own) camp.

[1] 237. [2] To be distant, **ab-esse.** [3] 178, N. 2.

LESSON XLI.

249. COMPARING OF ADVERBS.

MODELS.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
ācriter, *eagerly.*	**ācrius.**	**ācerrimē.**
miserē, *wretchedly.*	**miserius.**	**miserrimē.**
bene, *well.*	**melius.**	**optimē.**
male, *badly.*	**pēius.**	**pessimē.**
multum, *much.*	**plūs.**	**plūrimē.**
——	minus, *less.*	**minimē.**
——	magis, *more.*	**māximē.**

a. What case-ending of the **adjective** is used to form the **comparative** of the **adverb?**

b. How is the **superlative** formed from the **superlative** of the **adjective?** (Cp. 219.)

c. Form adverbs from these adjectives, and compare them: **aeger (aegro-),** *sick;* **prūdēns (prūdenti-),** *wise;* **līber (lībero-); similis (simili-),** *like;* **levis (levi-),** *light.*

250. ALLIED WORDS.

Benefit	Mountain	Primer
Celerity	Optimistic	Omnivorous
Extreme	Pertain	
Facile	Plural	

PŪGNA PHARSALICA.—II.

251. Quoniam equitēs - Pompēi contrā - dextrum - cornū **complūrēs** erant, **celeriter** cohortēs - VI Caesar monuit, "**Cum** - equitibus pugnātōte. Capita - eōrum tēlis vulnerāre - temptātōte; ita celeriter perterrēbuntur." Ex - his - equitibus multī erant adulescentēs pulcherrimīs - comīs, cīvēs - Rōmānī.

Pūgnae - signum ab - utrōque datum - est. Nostrī - militēs

in - legiōnēs - Pompēī properāvērunt. Prīmum tēlīs, deinde gladiīs, pūgnāre - contendērunt. Equitēs - Pompēī ā - sinistrā - parte eō - tempore in - nostrōs - equitēs contendēbant. Nostrī sē recēpērunt. Equitēs Pompēī, hōc ācriōrēs, ā parte apertā nostrōs mīlitēs superāre temptāvērunt. Tum Caesar suīs VI cohortibus sīgnum dedit. Hae equitēs subitō oppūgnāvērunt.

Hāc causā Pompēī equitēs perterritī sunt, atque fugā montēs altissimōs petēbant. Omnēs sagittāriī funditōrēsque interfectī sunt. Tum nostrae VI cohortēs Pompēī mīlitēs quī in sinistrō cornū pūgnābant circumiērunt. Illī fugā sē servāre contendērunt, quoniam ex duābus (297) partibus ā nostrīs oppūgnābantur.

252. WORD-LIST.

bene, melius, optimē, *well, better, best.*

celeriter, celerius, celerrimē, *quickly, more quickly, most quickly.*

facile, facilius, facillimē, *easily, more easily, most easily.*

longē, longius, longissimē *far, farther, farthest.*

magis, maximē, *more, most.*

multum, multō, } **plūs, plūrimum,** *much, more, most, mostly.*

minus, minimē, *less, least.*

253

POMPEY'S PLAN OF ATTACK AT PHARSALUS.

Pompey said[1] to the leaders of his horsemen, "You will[2] of a sudden attack the horsemen who are opposite our left wing. Because you are more numerous and have better arms than they you will easily terrify them. Then (99, N. 2) you will quickly attack the foot-soldiers on their exposed flank.[3] They will at that time be fighting with our legions.

Because they will thus be attacked from two directions at one (125) time, they will become frightened and will hasten to save themselves by flight."

[1] dīxit. [2] Imperative mood. [3] pars.

LESSON XLII.

254. ALLIED WORDS.

Contention	Inferiority	Omnipotent
Contentment	Malcontent	Petition
Defense	Mountainous	
Facility	Nostrum	

255. PŪGNA PHARSALICA.—III.

Tum Pompēius in - sua - castra ex - equō **contendit,** atque iīs quōs ad - portam conlocāverat dicit, "Castra **dēfendite** dīligenter." Castra ā - cohortibus, quae ibi conlocātae - erant, vērō dīligenter **dēfenduntur;** multō ācrius ā - Thracibus - barbarīsque - auxiliīs. Nam quī ex - proeliō ad - castra mīlitēs **contendunt** magis reliquā - fugā sē servāre quam castra **dēfendere** - **petunt.** Tandem omnēs tēlīs superantur, atque cum - ducibus centuriōnibus - tribūnīsque - mīlitum altissimum - montem quī ad - castra pertinet occupāre - **petunt.** Quoniam is - mōns est sine - aquā, locum quī prope - flūmen est tum occupāre - **petunt.**

Caesar partem suārum cōpiārum in castrīs Pompēī, partemque in suīs castrīs conlocat, atque cum legiōnibus IIII ad hunc locum properat. **Nostrī**[1] labōre sunt dēfessī, et nox ad-est, tamen mīlitēs Pompēī nocte aquam **petere** prohibent. Pauci nocte fugā se servāre **petunt;** reliquī in dēditiōnem sē Caesarī dant.

Sīgna ex proeliō ad eum portantur CLXXX et aquilae VIII.

Interim Pompēius ad lītus **contendēbat** et nāve terram Aegyptum **petēbat** atque ad urbem Alexandriam vēnit. Ibi

[1] I.e. Caesar's.

rēx erat Ptolemaeus, puer quī māgnīs cōpiīs sorōrem Cleopatram in bellō superāre temptābat. Amīcī hūius rēgis illīs quī ā Pompēiō vēnērunt gratissimē respondērunt; tamen Pompēium interficere **petēbant.** Ille ignorāns ex nāve ex-īvit. cum paucīs suīs et interfectus est.

FĪNIS.

256. WORD-LIST.

noster, nostra, nostrum, *our.*

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum, *to strive, to hasten,* sometimes, *to fight.*

petō, petere, petīvī, petītum, *to seek, beg, demand.*

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum, *to defend.*

257.

HOW CAESAR THWARTED POMPEY'S PLAN AT PHARSALUS.

Caesar saw the horsemen of Pompey opposite his own right end (251). He quickly said to the leaders of VI cohorts, "If (146, N. 5) yonder horsemen shall get the best of the horsemen who will be defending our left end, you will defend the rest of our soldiers."

Pompey's horsemen easily terrify Caesar's horsemen, and then[1] eagerly hasten against the exposed flank[2] of the legion. Those VI cohorts suddenly attack them with their swords, and greatly terrify them. They then attack the legions of Pompey upon their unprotected end. Thus Caesar's soldiers overcame Pompey by means of the very plan by which Pompey tried to overcome them.

[1] **tum.** [2] See 251, second paragraph.

LESSON XLIII.

THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS IN IŌ.

capiō, faciō, fugiō, iaciō and their Compounds.[1]

258. Learn all the tenses of the Indicative, the Present Imperative, and the Present Infinitive, Active and Passive, of **capiō** (484).

Compare these tenses of **capiō** with the tenses of **regō**, and note the differences.

259. 1. Capiēbātis, capiēbāminī. 2. Capit, capiēbat, capiet. 3. Capiunt, capiēbant, capient. 4. Capior, capis, caperis. 5. Capiēbar, capimur, cēpi. 6. Capiar, capimus, capere. 7. Cape, captae erāmus, captus sum. 8. Cēperāmus, cēperis.

a. Inflect in the same way **faciō**, *make*, and **fugiō**, *flee*.

260. EXAMPLES.

Qūinque annōs bellum gerēbātur. *War was carried on for five years.*

Collis centum pedēs ab-est. *The hill is a hundred feet distant.*

a. The accusative **annōs** expresses duration of time, the accusative **pedēs** extent of space. They answer the questions **how long?** and **how far?**

Accusative of Time and Space.

261. RULE.—**Duration of Time** and **Extent of Space** are expressed by the **Accusative.**

[1] These are the most common of the verbs of this class.

262.

CAESAR ET AFRĀNIUS.

The following is the account of the closing operations of Caesar's first campaign in Spain (compare 170), before the battle of Pharsalia (245). The incident given in 214 occurred during this campaign.

Afranius, the general who is opposing Caesar, has decided to leave the region of Ilerda, since his supplies are almost exhausted, and marching southward to make a fresh stand in a more favorable region. If Caesar can gain possession of a pass over the mountains which Afranius must cross, he can prevent this movement and perhaps starve his foes into a surrender. The camp of Afranius is situated between Caesar's camp and the pass. The two camps are in sight of each other, and it seems impossible for Caesar to seize the pass in advance of Afranius.

263. I.

Caesar cum omnibus cōpiis ex castris ex-īvit, māgnōque circuitū sine certō itinere exercitum **dūxit.** Hōc Afrānī mīlitēs vīdērunt et laetissimī erant. "Vidē," **dīxērunt,** "inopiā frūmentī Caesar fugit atque ad urbem Ilerdam rūrsus suōs mīlitēs **dūcit.**" Sed paulātim ad dextram agmen Caesar **dūcēbat** et brevī tempore prīmī superāverant regiōnem eōrum castrōrum et iam prope montem fuerant. Tum vērō celeriter omnēs cōpiās ex castrīs Afrānius **dūxit,** rectōque ad montēs itinere contendit.

Exercitum Caesaris viārum difficultātēs, Afrānī cōpiās **equitātūs** Caesaris tardābant. Ad montem prius agmen Caesaris vēnit atque ibi contrā exercitum Afrānī mīlitēs conlocāti sunt. Tum vērō et ab **equitātū** novissimum agmen Afrānī exercitūs premēbātur, et ante sē legiōnēs Caesaris vidēbat. Ad collem Afrānius exercitum **dūxit** atque ibi legiōnēs suās conlocāvit.

264. WORD-LIST.

equitātus, -us, m., *cavalry.*
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *to lead.*
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, *to say.*

265.

The enemy tried to seize the gate[1] by night, and thus to lead their forces into the city, but the leader of the men who were in the city quickly hastened to the gate. He wounded a few of the enemy, and thus frightened the rest. They did not attack him during the remainder of the night. During the whole of the next day,[2] with a few men, he was keeping the enemy away from the gate. At length,[3] by night, the enemy, wearied, retreated.[4]

[1] **porta.** [2] 268. [3] **tandem.** [4] **sē recēpit.**

LESSON XLIV.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

266. Nouns of this declension are **feminine,** except **diēs,** which is **masculine.**

a. **Diēs** is sometimes feminine in the singular.

267. Very few nouns belong to this declension, but some of those which do are frequently used, especially **aciēs, diēs,** and **rēs.**

268. **diēs,** *day.*

stem **diē.**

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
NOM.	diēs	NOM.	diēs
GEN.	diēī	GEN.	diērum
DAT.	diēī	DAT.	diēbus
ACC.	diem	ACC.	diēs
ABL.	diē	ABL.	diēbus
VOC.	(diēs)	VOC.	(diēs)

269. ALLIED WORDS.

Abduct	Conductor	Dictum
Amiable	Continue	Prediction
Conduce	Defender	
Conduct	Diction	

270. CAESAR ET AFRĀNIUS.—II.

Ex eō locō, ubi suum exercitum conlocāverat, IV cohortēs in eum montem quī ibi erat altissimus Afrānius mīsit. Hunc māgnō cursū hārum cohortium occupāre petīvit. Hās

cohortēs equitātus Caesaris ex omnibus partibus oppūgnāvit. Quārum mīlitēs in cōnspectū utrōrumque exercituum interfectī sunt.

Quoniam equitātus ita **proelium commīserat,** atque **rem** ita bene gesserat, ad Caesarem celeriter lēgātī, centuriōnēs, tribūnīque mīlitum vēnērunt. Dīxērunt, "In cōnspectū totius exercitūs Afrānī hae cohortēs interfectae sunt. Perterrētur ēius exercitus; proelium cum tuis legiōnibus nōn sustinēbit. Cūr dubitās **proelium committere?** Celeriter victōria nōbīs erit."

Hōc cōnsilium suōrum tamen Caesarī nōn grātum fuit. **Proelium** nōn **commīsit.** "**Proelium** nōn **committam,**" dīxit, "nam in pugnā meī mīlitēs vulnerābuntur. Sīne pūgnā hanc **rem** bene geram, nam ā frūmentō Afrānium prohibuī."

Cōnsilium Caesaris mīlitibus nōn grātum fuit, tamen paulum ex eō locō ex-īvit.

Tum Afrānius in castrīs suōs conlocāvit.

271. WORD LIST.

rēs, reī, f., *thing, state of affairs.*

committō, committere, commīsī, commissum, *to bring together.* With **proelium,** *to begin the battle.*

272.

After[1] the whole of Gaul had been overcome by Caesar, the Gauls again (81, N. 2) fought with him. They harassed[2] him for a long time, and kept him from (securing) grain. At length[3] he attempted to retreat (cp. 178, N. 2) into the province.[4] The Gauls had very many horsemen, and did not hesitate to begin battle with Caesar. But Caesar had already[5] sent secretly[6] to the Germans,[7] who sent him a great number of horsemen. After the Gauls had begun the battle the German cavalry was sent against them, and quickly brought the matter to a successful issue.

[1] 185, N. 2. [2] 289. [3] 265, N. 3. [4] **prōvincia.** [5] **iam.** [6] **clam.** [7] Not dative.

LESSON XLV.

SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE.

273. Learn the present and imperfect subjunctive of **sum** (486) and of the active and passive of **amō** (480), **moneō** (481), **regō** (482), and **capiō** (484).

a. In the same way inflect these tenses of **parō, pūgnō, videō, perterreō, dūcō** and **mittō.**

274. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. This Mood is used **chiefly in Subordinate clauses.**

a. All subordinate clauses, however, do not take the Subjunctive.

b. The Latin Subjunctive has no relation to the English Subjunctive, nor should it be thought of as being generally similar to the English Potential ("might," "would").

2. The so-called Present and Imperfect tenses have exactly the **same meaning** in nearly all subordinate clauses. They denote **incompleted action,** past, present, or future.

275. Incompleted action represents the action of the verb in the subordinate clause as **still going on** at the time to which the sentence refers. The "time to which the sentence refers" is the time denoted by the **main verb** of the sentence.

Incompleted Action.

a. The English and Latin **indicative** tenses of incompleted action are:

I was carrying, **Portābam** (Latin Imperfect).
I am carrying, **Portō** (Latin Present).
I shall be carrying, **Portābō** (Latin Future).

276. Never think of the Present Subjunctive as denoting incompleted action in present time only, like the Present Indicative, or of the Imperfect Subjunctive as denoting incompleted action in past time only, like the Imperfect Indicative. The names "Present" and "Imperfect" are very misleading in this respect.

RULE FOR USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

277. If the main verb of the sentence denotes **present** or **future** time, use the **present subjunctive.**

If the main verb of the sentence denotes **past** time, use the **imperfect subjunctive.**

278. EXAMPLES.

Sē parant ut pūgnent, *They prepare themselves that they may fight* (*so that they may fight, so as to fight, in order that they may fight, in order to fight, to fight, for the purpose of fighting*).

Sē parābant ut pūgnārent, *They prepared themselves that they might fight,* etc.

Lēgātōs mittunt nē oppidum oppūgnētur, *They send envoys in order that the town may not be attacked, that the town may not be attacked, lest the town be attacked.*

Clauses Expressing Purpose.

Lēgātōs mīsērunt nē oppidum oppūgnārētur, *They sent envoys in order that the town should not be attacked.*

a. Notice that the clauses introduced by **ut** or **nē** express the **purpose** or **intention** of the subjects of the principal clauses.

b. Notice that **ut** introduces a **positive, nē** a **negative,** purpose.

c. Notice that the verbs in the clauses expressing **purpose** are in the **subjunctive,** and conform to the rule. (277.)

d. Notice the various expressions by which **ut** and **nē** may **be translated.**

279. RULE.—**Purpose** is expressed by **ut** and **nē** with the **subjunctive.**

a. The **infinitive** is **never** to be used in Latin to express **purpose** as it is in English.[1]

280. ALLIED WORDS.

Adduce	Induce	Reduce
Deduce	Introduce	Traduce
Deduct	Introduction	
Educe	Produce	

281.

1. Ad silvam properābit ut victōriam obtineat.
2. Dēfessī prīncipēs labōrāvērunt ut urbs dēfenderētur.
3. Ut via dēfenderētur ad portam urbis properāvimus.
4. Boni prīncipēs bene pūgnāvērunt ut victōriam habērent.
5. Porta ā paucīs hominibus dēfendētur ut mūrus ā plūribus teneātur.
6. Nē pater dēfessus sit, pueri eī celeriter auxilium dabunt.
7. Nē peditēs vulnerentur equitātus ut eōs dēfendat properat.
8. Multās cohortēs dūcet ut mūrum oppūgnet.
9. Nē nocte labōrēmus contendēmus.
10. Ex urbe cōpiās dūcere temptat ut eīs auxilium mittat.
11. Ex castrīs prīncipem prohibet ut ipse tūtus sit.
12. Hōc locum occupat ut celeriter ad suōs contendat.
13. Multās cōpiās habet et bellum geret.
14. Lēgātōs mittam ut auxilium petam.
15. Cōpiās in castrīs tenet, sed brevī tempore peditēs ad montem dūcet, et hostem oppūgnābit.
16. Pūgnātis ut līberōs dēfendātis.

[1] In classical Latin exceptions to this rule are very rare, and are confined almost entirely to the works of Vergil and other poets.

282.

1. He will lead these troops into the winter camp, so that he may defend it easily.

2. He led a cohort into the winter camp, in order that he might defend it easily.

3. He sent help to the cohort, in order that it might quickly seize the hill.

4. He is preparing great forces, lest he be overcome.

5. He will hasten to the town, lest he be wounded.

6. He left[1] his baggage in the winter camp, so that his soldiers should not have a hard time (86) from want of horses.

[1] 317.

[1] RŌMAE URBIS PORTA OSTIENSIS.

LESSON XLVI.

283. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

First Person.

Ego, *I.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	ego	nōs
Gen.	meī	nostrūm or nostrī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs

Second Person.

Tū, *thou.*

Nom.	tū	vōs
Gen.	tuī	vestrum or vestrī
Dat.	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	tē	vōs
Abl.	tē	vōbīs

Third Person.

Suī, *of himself, herself, itself.*

Nom.	——	——
Gen.	suī	suī
Dat.	sibi	sibi
Acc.	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē
Abl.	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē

a. Notice that **suī** is **reflexive**; that is, like **suus** (191), it refers only to the **subject of the sentence**, or (sometimes) **of the clause**.

b. **Is, ea, id** (100) and sometimes **hīc** and **ille** (93) are used for the **personal pronoun** of the **third person** when **not reflexive.**

284. EXAMPLES.

Ego sum altus, tū es parvus, *I am tall, you are small.*

Omnēs sē (or **sēsē**) **laudant,** *They are all praising themselves.*

Amīcus mēcum manēbit, *My friend will stay with me.*

Quis vestrūm sē nōn recēpit? *Who of you did not retreat?*

a. Notice in the first sentence that the subjects **ego** and **tū** are expressed. They are **usually omitted** except for emphasis or contrast.

b. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons often have a **reflexive** sense: **Tū tē laudas,** *Thou praisest thyself.* **Omnēs nōs laudāmus,** *We are all praising ourselves.*

285. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

meus, -a, -um, *my, mine.*

tuus, -a, -um, *thy, thine, your* (sing.), *yours.*

suus, -a, -um, *his, hers, its, their, theirs.* (Reflexive 191.)

noster, -tra, -trum, *our, ours.*

vester, -tra, -trum, *your* (plu.) *yours.*

a. **Tuus** refers to **one** person:

Mārce, tuum amīcum vīdī, et tuōs equōs habuit, *Marcus, I saw your friend, and he had your horses.*

Vester refers to **more than one** person:

Mīlitēs, vestrōs tribūnōs videō, sed ubi est vester lēgātus? *Soldiers, I see your lieutenants, but where is your general?*

b. Notice that the word "*your*" translates both **tuus** and **vester.**

286. EXAMPLES.

Nōs quī mīlitēs sumus eum laudāmus, sed vōs, quī lēgātī estis, culpātis, *We, who are soldiers, praise him, but you, who are generals, blame him.*

a. Notice that the first **quī**, because it refers to **nōs,** is the subject of a verb in the **first** person, **sumus**; and that the second **quī,** which refers to **vōs,** is the subject of **estis,** a verb in the **second** person.

287. ALLIED WORDS.

Aqueduct	Dictionary	Predicate
Captor	Express	Predictive
Commit	Impress	
Compress	Repress	

288. CAESAR ET AFRĀNIUS.—III.

Caesar mīlitēs in montibus inter Afrānī castra castraque **sua** conlocāvit. Posterō **diē** principēs exercitūs Afrānī, quoniam in complūribus partibus **premēbantur,** perturbāti sunt, atque dē his rēbus cōnsilium **cēpērunt.** In cōnciliō eīs nūntiātur, "Quī **aquam** petunt ab equitātū Caesaris **prementur.**" Quam ob rem in viā quae ad **aquam** pertinuit equitēs **legiōnāriāsque cohortēs** conlocāvērunt, et posterum **diem** vallum ex castrīs ad **aquam** dūcere temptāvērunt ut intrā vallum **aquam** peterent atque nē ab equitātū **premerentur.** Hōs diēs tamen inopiā frūmentī **premēbantur**; **aquam** aegrē petēbant. Frūmentī cōpiam parvam **legiōnāriī** mīlitēs habēbant, sed auxiliīs nōn fuit, et eā causā māgnus eōrum numerus omne hōc tempus ad Caesarem veniēbant, atque sē eī dabant. Tandem Afrānius ad oppidum Ilerdam rūrsus properāre temptāvit, et ex castrīs ex-īvit. Caesar equitātum mīsit, ut novissimum agmen **premerētur**; ipse ex castrīs **legiōnāriōs** mīlitēs dūxit, ut equitātuī auxilium daret.

289. WORD-LIST.

aqua, aquae, *water.* **diēs, diēī,** m. and f., *day.*
legiōnārius, -a, -um, *belonging to a legion, legionary.*
premō, premere, pressī, pressus, *to press to harass.*
capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *to take.*

290.

(Use whatever words you think will express the sense of the following lines, which are taken from Macaulay's "*Battle of Lake Regillus.*")

THE CHALLENGE.

Mamilius spied Herminius
And dashed across[1] the way;
"Herminius, I have sought thee
Through many a bloody day.
One of us two, Herminius,
Shall never[2] more go home.[3]
I will lay on for[4] Tusculum,
And lay thou on for Rome."

291. REVIEW WORD-LIST.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, -a, -um	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
exterus, -a, -um	exterior, -ius	extrēmus, -a, -um
inferus, -a, -um	īnferior, -ius	infimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um	māior, -ius	māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um	—— plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
posterus, -a, -um	posterior, -ius	postrēmus, -a, -um
superus, -a, -um	superior, -ius	summus, -a, -um
		(suprēmus, -a, -um)
	prior, -ius	prīmus, -a, -um
	propior, -ius	proximus, -a, -um

[1] *Crossed,* **trāns-īvit.** [2] 119, N. 4. [3] Perhaps these two lines might be paraphrased, "*His city shall never more see one of us.*" [4] **prō.**

obtineō	obtinēre	obtinuī	obtentus
contineō	continēre	continuī	contentus
pertineō	pertinēre	pertinuī	———
capiō	capere	cēpī	captus
committō	committere	commisī	commissus
contendō	contendere	contendī	contentus
dēfendō	dēfendere	dēfendī	dēfēnsus
dīcō	dīcere	dīxī	dictus
dūcō	dūcere	dūxī	ductus
gerō	gerere	gessī	gestus
mittō	mittere	mīsī	missus
petō	petere	petīvī	petītus
premō	premere	pressī	pressus

aqua, aquae	bene
	celeriter
cohors, cohortis	facile
mōns, montis	longē
equitātus, -ūs	multum, multō
exercitus, -ūs	subitō
rēs, rēī	legiōnārius, -a, -um
	noster, nostra, nostrum
contrā	suus, -a, -um

LESSON XLVII.

READING LESSON.

292. ALLIED WORDS.

Aquarium	Fact	Position
Capture	Impetuous	Postern
Deduction	Induction	
Diurnal	Inexpressible	

293. CAESAR ET AFRĀNIUS.—IV.

Equitātus noster in novissimum agmen exercitūs Afrānī **impetūs faciēbat.** Nōn multum spatium Afrānius eō diē iter **fēcit,** atque quoniam **impetibus** equitātūs premēbātur montem altum cēpit ibique castra **ponere** vidēbātur. Postquam Caesar castra **posuerat** equitēs in agrōs īvērunt ut frūmentum caperent atque equis suis darent. Afrānius rūrsus subitō iter **facere** temptāvit. Sed Caesar cum legiōnāriis ē castrīs in eum properāvit; in castrīs impedīmenta atque paucās cohortēs relīquit. Celeriter equitātus quoque vēnit. Ācriter **impetum** in novissimum agmen **fēcit.** Complūrēs legiōnārii mīlitēs, etiam centuriōnes, interfectī sunt.

Tum vērō exercitus Afrānī rūrsus castra **posuit.** Haec castra in locō quī longē ab aquā ā-fuit **posita sunt.** Caesar **impetum** nōn **faciēbat,** sed eō diē tabernācula in suīs castrīs nōn **posuit,** ut celeriter in eōs **impetum facere** parātus esset. Posterum diem in castrīs suōs Afrānius tenēbat. Prīmā nocte ut aquam peteret nōn ex-ivit, sed proximō diē paucās cohortēs in castris relīquit atque omnēs reliquās cōpiās ad

aquam dūxit. Tamen eam diem frūmentum ex agris ut equis darent capere nōn temptāvit.

294. WORD-LIST.

impetus, impetūs, m., *an attack.*
faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *to make, do.*
ponō, ponere, posuī, positus, *to place.*

295.

1. For many days he tried to take the town.
2. He takes the sons of the chiefs as hostages, in order that they may not wage war upon him.
3. He placed his camp upon the highest hill, in order not to be attacked.
4. Caesar hurries to Spain to attack Afranius (279).
5. The cavalry attacked the rear rank of the army, in order that it should not march a great distance upon that day.
6. He went out of the camp in order to lead his forces to water.
7. He kept his men in the winter quarters for many days, lest the enemy should see them (279).
8. At what time will you see him ?

LESSON XLVIII.

NUMERALS.

296. Learn the cardinals (479).

297.

	Ūnus, *one.*			**Duo**, *two.*		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	**ūnus**	**ūna**	**ūnum**	**duo**	**duae**	**duo**
GEN.	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**duōrum**	**duārum**	**duōrum**
DAT.	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**
ACC.	**ūnum**	**ūnam**	**ūnum**	**duōs**, **duo**	**duās**	**duo**
ABL.	**ūnō**	**ūnā**	**ūnō**	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**
VOC.	(**ūnus**	**ūna**	**ūnum**)	(**duo**	**duae**	**duo**)

	Trēs, *three.*		Plural of **Mīlle**, *thousand.*
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	
NOM.	**trēs**	**tria**	**mīlia**
GEN.	**trium**	**trium**	**mīlium**
DAT.	**tribus**	**tribus**	**mīlibus**
ACC.	**trēs**	**tria**	**mīlia**
ABL.	**tribus**	**tribus**	**mīlibus**
VOC.	(**trēs**	**tria**)	(**mīlia**)

a. The declension of **ūnus** has been referred to before (125).

298. The cardinals from **quattuor** to **centum** are indeclinable.

The hundreds (excepting **centum**) are declined like the plural of **bonus.**

Centum and **mīlle** in the singular are indeclinable.

299. EXAMPLES.

Sex mīlitēs sunt in castrīs, *Six soldiers are in the camp.*

Ā sex mīlitibus oppūgnātus est, *He was assailed by six soldiers.* Use of Numerals.

Trīgintā tribus mīlitibus dōna dedit, *He gave gifts to thirty-three soldiers.*

Mīlle equitēs ad eum contendunt, *A thousand horsemen hasten to him.*

Quīnque mīlia equitum ad eum contendunt, *Five thousand horsemen hasten to him.*

a. Notice in the fourth sentence that **mīlle** (the singular) takes the same construction as the other cardinals (like **sex** in the first), but that **mīlia** (the plural) in the fifth sentence is a (neuter) **noun,** followed by the **genitive.**

b. This is called a **partitive genitive,** because it denotes the whole of which a part is taken. Other examples of this genitive, which has been frequently used in preceding exercises, are **pars frūmentī, paucī mīlitum.** Partitive Genitive.

c. Notice in the third sentence that a declinable cardinal is inflected even when it stands with an indeclinable one.

300. ALLIED WORDS.

Century	Dual	Trio
Circumnavigate	Factor	Unit
Co-operation	Repression	
Deposit	September	

301. CAESAR ET AFRĀNIUS.—V.

Caesar interim vallum circum castra exercitūs Afrānī dūcere temptābat. Diēs duōs haec **opera** cōnsiliaque geruntur; tertiō diē māgna pars **operis** perfecta erat. Illī ut Caesarem ex **opere** prohibeant signum dant **aciem**que **īnstruunt.** Caesar ex **opere** legiōnāriōs mīlitēs re-vocat **aciem**que **īnstruit.**

Aciēs quam Afrānius **īnstrūxerat** legiōnum quīnque erat; Caesaris prīmam **aciem** cohortēs ex quīnque legiōnibus tenēbant.

Nōn amplius pedum mīlibus duōbus ab illōrum castrīs castra Caesaris **ab-sunt**, cūius spatī partēs duās **aciēs** quae **īnstructae sunt** tenent; tertia ad impetum mīlitum relinquitur. Facilis fuga mīlitibus Afrānī est. Hāc causā Caesar pūgnāre nōn temptat. Afrānius quoque nōn pūgnāre sed ex **opere** legiōnāriōs Caesaris prohibēre temptat. **Ad noctem aciēs** ita continentur.

302. WORD-LIST.

aciēs, aciēī, f., *line of battle.*
opus, operis, n., *work.*
ab-sum, ab-esse, ā-fuī, *to be distant* or *absent.*
īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctum, *to construct.* Of troops, *to draw up.*

303. The Gauls were attacking the winter camp for ten days. There were only[1] three cohorts in it, and the gate which was the nearest[2] to the enemy was defended by not more than two hundred soldiers. Thirty of these were killed, and a hundred and five wounded. The legate himself hastened to the gate with twenty-two more soldiers, of whom five were wounded in a short time. Nevertheless[3] he defended the gate with much bravery. The enemy retreated (178, N. 2) by night. During this day five hundred Romans and two thousand of the enemy were killed (141, N. 6).

[1] **tantum.** [2] 237. [3] **tamen.**

LESSON XLIX.

304. Learn the first twenty-one ordinals (479).

305. ALLIED WORDS.

Cent	Minority	Summit
December	Mural	Unify
Duel	Pugnacious	
Decimal	Quart	

306. CAESAR ET AFRĀNIUS.—VI.

Posterō diē Caesar vallum dūcere rūrsus parāvit; illī trāns flūmen quod nōn longē ā-fuit cōpiās dūcere temptābant. Celeriter Caesar Germānōs equitumque partem trāns flūmen mīsit, ut ab hāc rē eōs prohibēret.

Tandem, quoniam ita ab omnibus rēbus prohibēbantur, atque māgna aquae frūmentīque inopia erat, tam premēbantur ut[1] conloquium peterent. Datus est obsidis locō Caesarī fīlius Afrānī.

In hōc conloquiō Afrānius sē suumque exercitum in dēditiōnem Caesarī dedit.

307.

Pompey led one hundred and ten cohorts and seven thousand horsemen from his camp to wage battle with Caesar at the place Pharsalia. He had forty five thousand men. He himself with two legions held one wing (199). Caesar led eighty cohorts from his camp, and had twenty five thousand men. He himself, with the soldiers of one legion, was opposite[2] Pompey. In this battle two hundred of Caesar's soldiers, with thirty centurions,[3] were killed (141, N. 5). Of Pompey's soldiers more than ten thousand were killed.

[1] 308, [2] contrā, [3] 321

LESSON L.

308. EXAMPLES.

Mīlitēs ita fortēs sunt ut impetum faciant, *The soldiers are so brave that they make an attack.*

Mīlitēs ita fortēs fuērunt ut impetum facerent, *The soldiers were so brave that they made an attack.*

Is mīles ā tribus Gallīs oppūgnātus est, ut vulnerāretur, *This soldier was attacked by three Gauls, so that he was wounded.*

Subjunctive of Result.

Hīc mīles tam fortis est ut nōn ā Gallīs perterreātur, *This soldier is so brave that he is not frightened by the Gauls.*

a. Notice that the clauses introduced by **ut** and **ut nōn** all express a **result.**

b. Notice that a **negative result** is introduced by **ut nōn.** How is a negative purpose introduced?

309.

RULE.—The **result** of an action is expressed by the **subjunctive** with **ut** and **ut nōn.**

310. ALLIED WORDS.

Aquatic	Inductive	Operate
Caption	Instruction	Press
Exposition	Interdiction	
Factory	Impetuosity	

311.

1. Mīles dēfessus erat ut ad urbem Ilerdam nōn mitterētur.
2. Quis nostrōrum perterrētur ut nōn aciem instruat?
3. Contendit ad silvās ut nōn ab hostibus caperētur.
4. **Contendit ad urbem nē ab hostibus capiātur.**

5. Nōs urbem tam diligenter dēfendimus ut nōn capiātur.

6. Flūmen viginti pedēs altum fuit.

7. Caesar quinquāgintā sex annōs vixit.

8. Mōns decem mīlia pedum altus est.

9. Quis nātus est centēsimō annō ante Christum nātum? Nōnne Caesar est?

10. Ut in Caesarem bellum gerant hominum mīlia centum Bellovacī habent, atque ex eō numerō sexāgintā dabunt. Suessiōnēs oppida habent duodecim, et hominum quinquāgintā dabunt, quindecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānī decem mīlia, Morinī viginti et quīnque mīlia, Menapii septem mīlia, Velocassī decem mīlia, Caeroesī cum reliquis ad quadrāgintā mīlia.

SUMMA HELVĒTIŌRUM.

11. Omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlia duo centum et sexāgintā trēs; Tulingōrum mīlia trīgintā sex; Latovicōrum quattuordecim; Rauracōrum trēs et vīginti; Bōiōrum duo et trīgintā; ex his quī arma habēbant ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo.

312.

1. He worked all the time, so as to have plenty of grain.

2. He works with eagerness, so that he has a supply of grain.

3. He defended himself with the greatest bravery, so that he was not captured.

4. He sent help to the town, so that it was not taken.

5. He will send footmen to the camp, so that it may not be taken.

6. He sent a legion to the winter camp, so that it should not be taken.

7. He sent a cohort to the hill, so that it was not taken by the enemy.

8. The legions are so many that the legate placed some of them in one camp, and some in another (126).

LESSON LI.

313. Learn the indicative, the present infinitive, and the present and imperfect subjunctive of **possum** (486).

a. To inflect the present, imperfect and future of **possum** prefix **pot-** to the forms of **sum**, remembering that **pot** becomes **pos** before **s**, and that the **es** of **essem** is dropped in the imperfect subjunctive.

b. The perfect, pluperfect and future perfect drop the **f** of **fuī**, etc.

314. ALLIED WORDS.

Barbarian	Military	Sign
Cogent	October	Unite
Decimate	Relinquish	
Impossible	Republic	

315. BACULUS CENTURIŌ.

During Caesar's wars in Gaul (170) the Eburones, a tribe living next to the Rhine, treacherously ambushed a Roman force of about six thousand men, which was wintering among them, and totally destroyed it. The incident described in 225 occurred during the fight.

The following summer Caesar attacked the Eburones with an overwhelming force. They did not attempt to resist, but took refuge in the woods and swamps. Caesar left his baggage in a camp at Aduatuca, and scattered his troops in small divisions over the country. But the Roman soldiers found it hard and dangerous work to hunt the Eburones from their hiding-places;

consequently Caesar announced that any of the neighboring Gauls or Germans who desired were free to aid him. He offered as inducement the slaves (or prisoners of war) and plunder (or herds and other property) which they might secure. The following narrative relates how this invitation to all the marauders of these wild regions almost brought disaster upon himself.

316. I.

Trāns flūmen Rhēnum ad Germānōs vēnit rūmor, "Omnēs quī bellum gerere **possunt** ad **praedam** Eburōnum ā Caesare ē-vocantur." **Cōgunt** equitum duo mīlia Sugambrī, quī sunt Germānōrum proximī Rhēnō. Trāns-īvērunt Rhēnum nāvibus trīgintā mīlibus passuum infrā eum locum ubi paucī legiōnārii ā Caesare **relictī.** Eburōnum multōs quōs exercitus Caesaris fugā sē servāre **cōgēbat** māgnamque **praedam** cēpērunt.

Sed ūnus ex captīvīs, "Quid vōs"; dīxit, "hanc miseram capitis **praedam**? Fortūnātissimī esse **poteritis,** nam celeriter contendere ad castra Aduatucam **potestis,** quō in locō omnēs suās fortūnās exercitus Rōmānōrum **coēgit,** ut ibi māgnam **praedam** capere **possitis.** Mīlitēs tam paucī sunt, ut in castris omnēs sē tenēre **cōgantur,** et centuriōnēs suōs dūcere extrā mūrōs nōn audeant."

Laetissimē Sugambrī suam **praedam relinquunt,** captīvum esse ducem **cōgunt,** et ad castra Aduatucam contendunt.

317. WORD-LIST.

possum, posse, potuī, *to be able, can.*
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, *to collect, to compel.*
relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus, *to leave behind.*
praeda, praedae, *plunder.*

318.

1. He hastens with a small force to the winter camp to defend it (279).

2. Because of the lack of grain he was unable to keep together the troops which he had collected from all regions for the purpose of carrying on war.

3. They were greatly disturbed (321), so that they left their booty and hurried into the woods (309).

4. Is your foot or (218, N. 8) mine the smaller?

5. We will send the foot-soldiers to the hills, in order that they may not be harassed by the horsemen.

6. Are you able to collect the men who are in the fields?

7. I was compelled to hasten to your camp because I was unable to defend my own.

8. He sent five hundred soldiers with me,[1] so that I might be able to take the town (279).

[1] **mēcum.**

LESSON LII.

READING LESSON.

319. ALLIED WORDS.

Instructor	Posse	Terrestrial
Impetus	Perturbation	Unification
Manufactory	Predatory	
Opulent (cp. **inopia**)	Proposal	

320. BACULUS CENTURIŌ.—II.

Cicerō, quī prīnceps in castrīs erat, eō tempore quīnque cohortēs frūmentī causā in proximōs agrōs mīserat, quōs inter et castra ūnus collis erat, ut vērō paucī in castrīs essent, quōrum multī erant ex legiōnibus ā Caesare aegrī relictī.

Hōc ipsō tempore Sugambrōrum equitēs vēnērunt, atque subitō ā decumānā portā in castra contendere temptant. Nostrī rē novā **perturbantur,** ac vix prīmum impetum cohors in statiōne sustinēre poterat. Aegrē portās nostrī dēfendēbant; reliqua loca mūrus ipse per sē dēfendit.

Tōta castra **perturbantur,** atque **alius** ex **aliō** causam rēī petēbat. **Alius** dicēbat, "Iam castra capta sunt!" **alius,** "Caesar **interfectus est** atque barbarī, victōriā laetī, vēnērunt."

Erat aeger in castrīs relictus Publius Sextius Baculus, ac diem iam quintum cibum edere nōn poterat. Hīc sine armīs ex tabernāculō ex-īvit; vīdit hostēs quī in portā cum paucīs nostrōrum pūgnābant, cēpit arma ā proximīs mīlitibus atque ad portam contendit. Cum eō īvērunt **centuriōnēs** ēius cohortis quae in statiōne erat.

Parvum tempus proelium sustinēre poterant. Relīquit animus Sextium, quī graviter vulnerātus est: aegrē ab **aliīs centuriōnibus** servātus est atque intrā portam portātus est. Quoniam hōc spatium temporis virtūte Baculī inter-positum erat, reliquī tandem in mūrō et ad portam īvērunt ut castra dēfenderent.

Interim cohortēs quīnque quī in agrīs fuerant ad castra vēnērunt. Germānī tandem ex-īvērunt et cum eā praedā quam in silvīs relīquerant trāns flūmen Rhēnum **sē recēpērunt.**

FĪNIS.

321. WORD-LIST.

centuriō, centuriōnis, m., *centurion.* Each cohort was divided into three "maniples," and each maniple into two "centuries" Each century was commanded by a centurion. The centurions were all men who had been ordinary soldiers (**mīlitēs**) and had been promoted because of bravery or efficiency. Each legion had 60 centuries, and each century contained from 60 to 100 men.

īnter-ficiō, inter-ficere, inter-fēcī, inter-fectus, *to kill.*

re-cipiō, re-cipere, re-cēpī, re-ceptus, *to take back, to receive;* **sē recipere,** *to retreat.*

alius, alia, aliud, *another* (125, 126).

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to disturb greatly, throw into confusion.*

322.

1. With much difficulty (217, line 12) he leads the men through (166, N. 2) the woods to the top of the mountain, in order that they may be able to see the cities, rivers, hills, and roads of all this region.

2. For three years he had been preparing to wage war, so that his cities should not be captured.

3. Caesar led the line of march to the nearest hill,

in order that there he might draw up the line of battle.

4. Because he has fewer soldiers than the Gauls he keeps them in camp, lest they be killed (279).

5. The leader said to his soldiers: "You are men who have fought well in many battles in Gaul, so that you are easily able to take yonder camp (309). I myself will lead you."

6. They are in difficulty from want of javelins, so that they are unable either[1] to make an attack or[1] to retreat (309).

7. Cannot you yourself give me the horse?

8. Some gave him a hundred, some fifty, hostages.

LESSON LIII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. Ī-VERBS.

Audiō (stem **audī-**), *hear.*

Principal parts, **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus.**

323. Learn all the tenses, active and passive, of **audiō** (485). How do the forms of **audiō** differ from those of **regō** and **capiō**?

324. 1. Audit, audiēbat, audiet. 2. Audī, audīre. 3. Audiunt, audiuntur. 4. Audītis, audiēbātis, audiētis. 5. Audiēbam, nē audīrēs, audīte. 6. Audiam, audītur, audiēbāmur. 7. Audiar, audīmur, audirī. 8. Ut audīrent, audiēbātur. 9. Ut audiās, audiētur.

325. Inflect **mūniō**, *fortify*, and **veniō**, *come*, like **audiō**.

326. PROELIUM MUNDAE.[2]

Ad proelium Mundae, quod postquam Pompēius interfectus erat in Hispāniā gestum est, Caesar cum ēius filiīs pūgnāvit.

[1] See **aut** in vocabulary.

[2] This anecdote is related by Plutarch, in his Life of Caesar. Its truth has been doubted.

Tam ācriter pūgnātum est ut dē hōc proeliō amīcīs Caesar diceret, "Dē victōriā saepe pūgnāvī, sed dē vītā hōc unō tempore."

327. GALLĪ ET GERMĀNĪ.

Ōlim Germānōs Gallī virtūte tam superāvērunt ut ultrō cum eīs bella gererent, et propter hominum māgnum numerum agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt, loca circum Hercyniam silvam, Volcae Tectosagēs, quī Gallī sunt, occupāvērunt. Hī ad hōc tempus[1] hīs locīs sēsē continent. Nunc ā Germānīs tam multīs proeliīs Gallī sunt superātī ut nōn sē ipsī illīs virtūte parēs existimāre possent.

328.

1. He hastens from camp to make an attack (279).

2. He hastened to the winter camp, in order not to be attacked.

3. He tried to capture the baggage of the whole legion, so that he might be able to prevent the march by the lack of food.[2] He seized the baggage of eight cohorts, so that very many soldiers are in want of food. But our legate will send the cavalry to the fields, that he may thus obtain grain.

4. The Gauls once sent colonies across the river Rhine into Germany, so that they have held the most fertile parts of this country until the present time. Nevertheless (303, N. 3) they are not the equals of the Germans in number, or[3] in other respects,[4] so that the latter now wage war upon them of their own accord.

[1] That is, the time of Caesar. [2] cibus, -ī. [3] aut. [4] rēs.

LESSON LIV.

REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

329. Learn the perfect and pluperfect subjunctives and the perfect and future infinitives of all the model verbs.

Review the Use of Principal Parts (83).

Review carefully the Personal Endings (76) and Tense Signs (188).

330. Each verb has **three** stems; one for the **Present, Imperfect** and **Future** tenses; one for the **Perfect, Pluperfect** and **Future Perfect** tenses, **Active;** and one for the **same tenses** in the **Passive.** This is why the "**Principal Parts**" must be learned.

a. Do you see any reason, in the meanings of the tenses, why the stem of the Present, Imperfect and Future is different from that of the Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect tenses? (Cp. 275, *a.*)

331. Every verb form in the Present, Imperfect and Future tenses contains some or all of these divisions: Stem, Ending, Conjugation (or Connecting) vowel, Tense sign; **nūnti-ā-ba-t, hab-ē-bi-mus, pet-e-nt.**

332. Conjugation Vowel: First Conjugation, **Ā: nūntiAt, nūntiĀbat; nūntiĀbit, nūntiĀret,** except in the Present Subjunctive, **nūntiEt.** Second Conjugation, **E: habEt, habĒbat, habĒbit, habEat, habĒret.** Third Conjugation, variable. Fourth Conjugation, **I, audIt, audIēbat, audIet, audIat, audĪret.**

a. Notice that verbs in **iō** of the third conjugation have some forms like the fourth. Which are they?

333. Tense signs: Imperfect Indicative, BA: nūntiāBAt, habēBAt, petēBAt, capiēBAt, audiēBAt.

Future Indicative: First and Second Conjugation, **bō, bi, bu-nt.**

The Third and Fourth Conjugations have the vowel **A** in the First person singular, and **E** in the other persons: **regAm, regĒs, audiAm, audiĒs.**

Present Subjunctive: First Conjugation, vowel **E**: **nūntiEm.** Other Conjugations, vowel **A**: **habeAm, petAm, capiAm, audiAm.**

Imperfect Subjunctive. RE: nūntiāRĒs, habēRĒs, petеRĒs, capeRĒs, audīRĒs.

334. Personal Endings: Active, **ō** or **m** (*I*), **s** (*thou*), **t** (*he*), **mus** (*we*), **tis** (*you*), **nt** (*they*).

Passive, **r** (*I*), **ris** (*thou*), **tur** (*he*), **mur** (*we*), **minī** (*you*), **ntur** (*they*).

335.

a. What unexplained peculiarity is there in the imperfect indicative of the fourth conjugation?

b. Notice that the imperative and infinitive do not conform to these rules.

LESSON LV.

THE INFINITIVE.

336. We are accustomed to think of the **infinitive** as meaning "to make," "to do," etc., and nothing else, but the **Latin infinitive** really has **two** meanings **in English.** The words **eum mittere,** for instance, in one construction mean "*to send him,*" and in another, "*that he is sending.*"

337. The infinitive has two main uses:

I. It completes the meaning of a verb, as in English.

Vult venīre, *He wishes to come.*

Mē interficere temptat, *He is trying to kill me.*

I, *a*. It has been very frequently used thus in the preceding lessons. This construction is easily understood (155).

The perfect and future infinitive are rarely used in this construction.

I, *b*. CAUTION.—The infinitive by a similar usage in English expresses purpose.

Venit ut mē videat, *He comes to see me.*

The idea of **purpose** is expressed in **Latin** by the **subjunctive** with **ut** or **nē** (279).

II. USE OF INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS.

EXAMPLES.

Tū oppūgnās, *You are attacking.*	**Dīcit tē oppūgnāre,** *He says that you are attacking.*
Urbs oppūgnāta est, *The city has been attacked.*	**Exīstimāmus urbem oppūgnātam esse,** *We suppose that the city has been attacked.*
Tū oppūgnābis, *You will attack.*	**Cōgnōscō tē oppūgnātūrum esse,** *I know that you will attack.*

II, *a*. Compare the sentences in these two columns. The sentences in the second column contain **indirect statements.** What is an indirect statement?

II, *b*. Now compare each sentence in the second column with its translation. Notice that **tē oppūgnāre** is translated *"that you are attacking"*; **urbem oppūgnātam esse,** *"that the city has been attacked"*; **tē oppūgnātūrum esse,** *"that you will attack."*

II, *c*. Notice that there is **no word** in the **Latin** to correspond to the English word "that." The English word **that,** when used to introduce an indirect statement, **cannot be translated** into Latin.

It is very important that the pupil remember this fact.

338. Thus, after a verb denoting **mental action** ("to say," "think," "notice," "learn," etc.) the English usually uses the particle "that," followed by a finite verb; for instance, "He knows that you are the person."

The verb or verbs **introduced by** the English "**that**" are in Latin put in the **infinitive.**

These infinitives are called **infinitives in Indirect Statements.**

339. In the model sentences in 337 notice that not only are the verbs of the **direct statement** changed to **infinitives** in the **indirect statement,** but that the **nominatives tū** and **urbs** are changed to **accusatives, tē** and **urbem,** although in the English translation each still remains the subject of the same verb as in the Direct Statement.

These **accusatives** are said to be the **subjects** of the **infinitives** which follow them.

340. RULE.—**The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.**

341. RULE.—Statements after verbs and other expressions of **saying, thinking, knowing,** and **perceiving** are called **Indirect Statements,** and are expressed by the **infinitive with subject accusative.**

342.

1. Dicit sē tribūnum futūrum esse.
2. Dīcit fugere Rōmānōs.
3. Eī nūntiant eōs arma capere.
4. Ē castris equitātum ē-dūci cōgnōscunt.
5. Existimat Cāium Fabium lēgātum cum legiōnibus duābus in castris relictum esse.
6. Cōgnōscit eōrum fugā reliquum equitātum esse perterritum.

7. Ad Aeduōs prīncipēs duōs, quōs illī interfectōs esse existimant, cum equitibus mittit.

8. Caesar cōgnōscit summīs cōpiīs castra oppūgnāta esse; et multōs tēlīs vulnerātōs esse. Summō studiō mīlitum brevī tempore ad castra per-vēnit.

9. Ubii, quī obsidēs dedērunt, dīcunt nūlla auxilia ex suā cīvitāte in Trēverōs missa esse. Trēverī trāns flūmen Rhēnum lēgātōs mittunt. Lēgātī Germānīs dīcunt māgnam partem exercitūs nostrī interfectam esse, atque multō minōrem super-esse partem. Sed Germānī eīs dīcunt sē nōn bellō amplius fortūnam temptātūrōs esse.

10. Dīcunt sē per hanc terram iter factūrōs esse. Lēgātus dīcit sē eōs prohibitūrum esse. Illī dīcunt sē aliud iter habēre nūllum.

11. Dīcis māgnum numerum mīlitum ad tē celeriter ā tribūnō ad-dūcī.

12. Dīcunt omnēs equitēs Aeduōrum interfectōs esse, et ipsōs fūgisse.

343. Turn the indirect statements in the first six sentences of 342 back into direct statements. If the perfect infinitive is used in the indirect statement, a tense denoting past time should be used in the direct statement; if a present infinitive, a tense denoting present time; if a future infinitive, a tense denoting future time.

LESSON LVI.

344. THE TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS.

Dīcit **Dīcet** **Dīxit**	**tē oppūgnāvisse,**	*He says* *He will say* *He said*	*that you attacked (have attacked).*
Dīcit **Dīcet** **Dīxit**	**urbem oppūgnātam esse,**	*He says* *He will say* *He said*	*that the city was (has been) attacked.*
Dīcit **Dīcet** **Dīxit**	**tē oppūgnāre,**	*He says* *He will say* *He said*	*that you are attacking.* *that you were attacking.*
Dīcit **Dīcet** **Dīxit**	**urbem oppūgnārī,**	*He says* *He will say* *He said*	*that the city is being attacked.* *that the city was being attacked.*
Dīcit **Dīcet** **Dīxit**	**tē oppūgnātūrum esse,**	*He says* *He will say* *He said*	*that you will attack.* *that you would attack.*
Dīcit **Dīcet** **Dīxit**	**urbem oppūgnātum īrī,**[1]	*He says* *He will say* *He said*	*that the city will be attacked.* *that the city would be attacked.*

a. Notice the change in the English translation from *are* to *were* under the **present** infinitive, and *will* to *would* under the **future** infinitive.

b. Notice that these changes occur because the **English** takes the **point of view**, as to time, of the man who **quotes** the original speaker; that is, the point of view of **the one** who **speaks** or **writes** the **completed** sentence.

[1] More commonly **fore ut urbs oppūgnētur** (**oppūgnārētur**, after **Dīxit**). **Fore** is equivalent to **futūrum esse** (486).

A little reflection will show that this is always the point of view of the present, or **present** time.

c. The **Latin,** unlike the English, **retains** the **point of view,** as to time, of the **person whose words are quoted,** that is, the point of view of the person denoted in the English sentences above by "He."

345. The **time** denoted by the **infinitive,** then, is the **same** as the time which was denoted by the **verb** of the **direct statement** whose place the infinitive has taken.

a. The direct statement, for instance, **"Vēnerat,"** "*He had gone,*" **always** takes a perfect infinitive when it is turned into an indirect statement; **"Veniō,"** "*I am going,*" a present infinitive; **"Veniēs,"** "*You will go,*" a future infinitive.

346. RULE.—The **tenses** of the **infinitive** in indirect statements denote past, present, or future, **relatively** to the **time** denoted by the **verb of saying.**

a. The tenses of **English** verbs in indirect statements are past, present, or future, relatively to present time.

347.

1. Eō tempore mūrum dēfendēbat.
2. Dīxit sē mūrum dēfendisse.
3. Eō tempore dīxit sē mūrum dēfendere.
4. Dīcit eum eō tempore mūrum dēfendisse.
5. Caesar dīxit sē saepe proelium commīsisse.
6. Caesar dicit sē saepe proelium committūrum esse.
7. Caesar dīxit sē proelium committere.
8. Caesar dīcit eum proelium committūrum esse.
9. Nūntiātum est iter **facile** eum factūrum esse.
10. Caesarem **certiōrem facient** sēsē nōn **facile** ab oppidīs hostēs prohibēre posse.
11. Haeduī ad Caesarem lēgātum mittunt ut eum **certiōrem faciant** paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrōs Helvētiōs occupāvisse.

12. Cōnsidius dīcit montem ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallōrum armīs **cōgnōvisse.** Sed multō diē Caesar **cōgnōscit** montem ā suīs tenērī.

13. Allobrogēs fugā sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt et eum **certiōrem fēcērunt** sibi praeter agrōs nihil relictum esse.

14. Eōdem diē **certior factus est** hostēs sub monte impedīmenta posuisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō.

348. WORD-LIST.

cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus, *to learn about, to recognize, to examine.*

certus, -a, -um, *certain, trustworthy;* **certiōrem facere,** *to inform.*

facilis, facile; *easy* (167).

349.

1. He learned that the enemy had made an attack.
2. He learns that his own men are holding the mountain.
3. He learned that his own men had held the mountain for two days.
4. He learns that the enemy will make an attack.
5. He learned that the enemy was making an attack.
6. He learned that an attack had been made by the cavalry.
7. He will learn that the enemy is fighting with great bravery
8. He learns that the soldiers are tired.

LESSON LVII.

350. THE APPEAL OF THE GAULS TO CAESAR.

Postquam Caesar bellum cum Helvētiis gessit, concilium tōtius Galliae diē certō habitum est. Ex eō conciliō prīncipēs ad Caesarem veniunt atque ita eī nūntiant:

Galliae tōtius factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hōs inter sē mul-

tōs annōs contendisse, atque ab Arvernīs et Sēquanīs Germānōs trāns Rhēnum flūmen ductōs esse. Cum hīs Haeduōs armīs contendisse; omnēs principēs et omnem equitātum in proeliīs interfectōs esse. Coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare, et iūrāre sēsē neque obsidēs ā Sēquanīs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō petitūrōs esse. Sed pēius Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs accidisse. Ariovistum, rēgem Germānōrum, in ēorum terram suum exercitum dūxisse, tertiamque partem agrī occupāvisse, atque nunc alteram partem tertiam capere temptāre. Hominem esse barbarum; nōn posse ēius imperia diūtius sustinērī.

Caesarem ūnum Galliam omnem ab Ariovistō posse dēfendere.

351.

1. Caesar learned that the Arverni had brought Ariovistus with a large army into Gaul; that the Gauls had been compelled to give hostages to Ariovistus; that he was about to seize a very large part of Gaul and give it to the Germans; and that Caesar alone was able tō defend the Gauls from him.

2. Change 350 from **coāctōs esse** to the end into a direct statement.

LESSON LVIII.

352. EXAMPLES.

Timeō ut properet, } *I fear that he is not*
Timeō nē nōn properet, } *hastening.*

Subjunctive after Verbs of Fearing.

Timeō nē properet, *I fear that he is hastening,*
or, *I fear lest he be hastening.*

a. Notice that **verbs of fearing** are followed by **ut** or **nē** with the **subjunctive.**

b. Notice that **nē,** in this construction, can always be translated by "*lest.*"

c. Notice that **nē** can also be translated by "*that*," and that **ut** means "*that not.*" **Ut** and **nē** thus **seem** to exchange the meanings which they usually have.

353. RULE.—The **subjunctive** with **ut** or **nē** is used after **verbs of fearing; ut** meaning "*that not*," and **nē** "*that*" or "*lest.*"

354.

1. Trēs annōs frūmentum parābant, ut in itinere cōpiam habērent.

2. **Timēmus** ut bonum cōnsilium capiās.

3. **Timēmus** nē mālum cōnsilium capiās.

4. Mōns erat altissimus, ut facile paucī eōs prohibēre possent.

5. **Timēbat** ut **venīrem.** **Timēbat** nē aeger essem.

6. Ut auxilium dare posset, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē posuit.

7. Alius aliī in pūgnā auxilium dabat.

8. Ita celeriter **vēnērunt** ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et ad nostram aciem hostēs vidērentur.

9. Lēgātī **timuērunt** nē aqua tōtī exercituī darī nōn posset.

10. Dīcit Nammēium prīncipem locum obtinuisse et nūntiāvisse sē per illam terram iter factūrum esse.

11. **Timēmus** nē noster exercitus celeriter nōn **veniat** et urbs ā prīncipibus hostium capiātur.

12. Caesar certior factus erat eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

13. Ita diēs quīndecim iter fēcērunt, ut spatium inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnque aut sex mīlibus passuum esset.

14. Partem suārum cōpiārum trāns flūmen dūcere temptāvērunt, eō cōnsiliō, nē hīberna oppūgnārentur.

15. In conciliō optimum esse vidētur ad suam terram quemque **venīre,** nē in aliōrum terrīs sed in suīs pūgnent.

16. Quā rē erit ut tōtius terrae cōpiae ab eō premantur.

17. In collibus legiōnāriōs ponet, ut dē cōnsiliīs prīncipum cōgnōscere possit.

18. Ut omnēs ūnō tempore in hostēs impetum facerent, ā proeliō suōs tenēbat.

19. **Timent** ut hostēs impetum faciant.

20. **Timuērunt** nē hostēs impetum facerent.

21. Legiōnāriōs ex urbe dūxit ut hostis impetum faceret.

22. Legiōnāriōs ad superiōrem locum dūcit nē hostēs impetum faciant.

23. Legiōnāriōs ad locum superiōrem dūxit, ut hostēs impetum nōn facerent.

24. Hīberna nōn amplius quīnque mīlibus passuum ā flūmine ab-sunt.

355. WORD-LIST.

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus, *to come.*
timeō, timēre, timuī, —, *to be afraid, to fear.*

356.

1. He came to see you, but was afraid that you would not be able to see him.

2. He is afraid that you will not be able to see him, so that he has not come to see you (309).

3. They said that the enemy tried last night to seize the gate of the town, and wounded five men (341, 346).

4. They say that the fleet will attack his ships, but that his soldiers will easily defend themselves (341, 346).

5. He learns that the Germans will attack him, and is about to abandon this region, so that they may not be able to do[1] this (179, 346).

6. He is leaving this region, in order that the Germans may not be able to attack him (179).

7. He took possession of this hill and of yonder mountain, so that he should be able to make an attack upon the enemy from three directions at the same time.

8. He said that he was afraid that you would leave the baggage.

[1] **faciō.**

LESSON LIX.

PARTICIPLES.

357. Learn the participles of the model verbs (480–486).

a. Observe that there is **no present passive** or **perfect active** participle.

That is, taking the verb "to send" as an example, there are **no forms** in Latin corresponding to "**having sent**" or "**being sent.**"

b. What participles are used as parts of the compound tenses in the model verbs?

358. Participles are **declined** like **adjectives**, and, like them, **agree** with nouns or pronouns in **gender, number,** and **case.**

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Amāns, *loving.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
NOM.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
GEN.	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
DAT.	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
ACC.	amantem	amāns	amantēs, -īs	amantia
ABL.	amante, -ī	amante, -ī	amantibus	amantibus
VOC.	(amāns	amāns)	(amantēs	amantia)

The declension is similar to that of **sapiēns** (167).

Perfect (**amātus**) and **Future** (**amātūrus**) Participles are declined like **bonus** (474).

359. EXAMPLES.

Ad Gallōs oppūgnantēs oppidum vēnit, *He came to the Gauls (while they were) attacking a town.*

Prīnceps captus ad Italiam mittētur, *The chief, if he is*

captured (or, *when captured*, literally, *having been taken*), ***will be sent to Italy.***

Prīncipem captum ad Ītaliam mīsit, *He sent the chief, when he had been captured* (*having been captured*), *to Italy.*

Gallī graviter perturbātī fortiter pūgnāvērunt, *The Gauls,* (*although*) *greatly disturbed* (*having been greatly disturbed*), *fought bravely.*

Lēgātus, perturbātus, ad suōs properāvit, *The legate,* (*because he was*) *disturbed* (*having been disturbed*), *hastened to his own men.*

Nāvem relictam cēpit, *He took the ship which had been left behind.*

Oppidum oppūgnātum est, *The town has been* (or *was*) *attacked.*

a. The **present** (active) participle represents the action as **going on** at the time denoted by the main verb.

Use of Participle.

b. Notice the various ways in which the **perfect** (passive) participle can be translated. It represents the action as **completed** at the time denoted by the main verb. This explains the somewhat puzzling fact illustrated by the last sentence, that **est,** when combined with the perfect participle of a regular verb to form the perfect passive tense, **seems** to change its meaning to "*was.*" **Oppidum oppūgnātum est,** if translated literally, means "*The town is* (*in a state of*) *having* (*formerly*) *been attacked.*"

Does this also explain why **erat,** when found in the pluperfect passive of a regular verb, is translated "*had been*" instead of "*was,*" and why **erit,** when found in the future perfect passive, is translated "*shall have been*" instead of "*shall be*"?

360. RULE.—With **names of towns** the place to which is expressed by the **accusative without a preposition.**

Accusative of Place Whither, Names of Towns.

Ad urbem Rōmam vēnī, *I came to the city Rome.*

Rōmam vēnī, *I came to Rome.*

Ad Galliam vēnī, *I came to Gaul.*

a. In the first sentence **ad** governs **urbem,** with which **Rōmam** is in apposition.

In the second **Rōmam** is used alone, and so is without a preposition.

b. Notice that the rule does not apply to the names of countries.

c. **Domus** (420, 472) also conforms to this rule.

361. CURIŌ IN ĀFRICĀ.

Caesar's operations against the Senate and Pompey before the battle of Pharsalia (245) included the sending of an army under Caius Curio to invade the Roman province of Africa, in order to conquer Varus, a general who was friendly to the Senate. Varus secured the help of king Juba, who ruled over the tribes living in the mountains south and west of the province.

362. I.

His temporibus Cāius Curiō in Āfricam,[1] ā Caesare missus, ex Siciliā duās legiōnēs ex quattuor quās eī dederat Caesar et quīngentōs equitēs trāns-portāvit et ad locum Anquillāriam vēnit. Hūius adventum Lūcius Caesar fīlius cum decem longīs nāvibus ad Clupeam exspectāns, timēns nāvium multitūdinem ex altō ad proximum litus **fūgerat** et pedibus Hadrumentum properāverat. Id oppidum Cōnsidius Longus ūna legiōne tenēbat. Reliquae nāvēs Lūcī Caesaris, **fugientēs** ex altō, sē Hadrumentum recēpērunt. Lūcium Cae-

[1] See Maps IV and V for the places mentioned in 362 and 365.

sarem **fugientem** capere temptāns Rūfus nāvibus duodecim quās ex Siciliā Curiō ē-dūxerat ut classem ā Vārō missam ab onerāriīs nāvibus prohiberet, postquam in lītore relictam ā Lūciō nāvem vīdit, hanc cēpit; atque ad Curiōnem cum suā classe et nāve captā vēnit.

Curiō Rūfum Uticam cum nāvibus prae-mīsit; ipse exercitum ad flūmen Bagradam dūxit. Ibi Rebilum lēgātum cum legiōnibus relīquit; ipse cum equitātū properāvit ad Castra Cornēlia, quoniam is locus idōneus habēbātur. Is est mōns ad lītus, et ab-est ab Uticā paulō amplius passūs mīlle.

363. WORD-LIST.

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitus, *to run away, to flee.*

364. (Use participles wherever you can.)

I.—THE DEATH OF DUMNORIX.

Dumnorix, fearing that Caesar was going to kill him, fled from the Roman camp with the horsemen of the Haedui. Horsemen were sent by Caesar, so that he might be captured while he was fleeing. They killed him while he was trying to defend himself, and repeating (saying often[1]) that he was free himself and the chief of a free state. His horsemen, terrified, came back again[2] to Caesar.

2. Lucius Caesar, fearing lest he should be captured by the fleet which had been sent from Italy, left his ship upon the nearest shore and came on foot to Hadrumentum. The fleet of Rufus, who was trying to capture the ships of Lucius Caesar, came to the ship which the latter had abandoned. Rufus came with the captured ship to Curio, who sent him to Utica.

[1] saepe. [2] iterum.

LESSON LX.

READING LESSON.

265. CURIŌ IN ĀFRICĀ.—II.

Ex hōc monte Curiō castra Vārī vidit. Eōdem tempore vidit multa ex omnibus partibus per viās ā populō portārī, quae bellum timentēs ex agrīs in urbem portābant. Ad hās viās equitātum misit, ut haec caperet, eōdemque tempore sēscentī equitēs ex oppidō peditēsque quadringentī, ā Vārō missī, ex-īvērunt. Equitēs pūgnāvērunt, neque vērō primum impetum nostrōrum sustinēre potuērunt, sed interfecti sunt circiter centum et vīgintī. Reliquī sē in castra ad oppidum recēpērunt.

Interim adventū longārum nāvium Curiō magistrīs onerāriārum nāvium nūntiāvit, quae ad Uticam numerō circiter ducentae stābant, "Eum hostium habēbō locō, quī nōn ad Castra Cornēlia suās nāvēs trādūxisset." Omnēs nāvēs ex Uticā ex-īvērunt et ad Castra Cornēlia vēnērunt. Quā rē omnium rērum cōpiam obtinēre exercitus potuit.

Tum Curiō sē in castra ad Bagradam flūmen recēpit, posterōque diē exercitum Uticam dūxit et prope oppidum castra ponēbat. Eī castrōrum vāllum facienti equitēs nūntiant māgna auxilia equitum peditumque ā rēge Iubā missa Uticam venīre, eōdem tempore māgna pulvis vidētur, et brevissimō tempore primum agmen est in cōnspectū. Novam rem timēns Curiō equitēs prae-mittit ut ita primum impetum sustineat; ipse celeriter ab opere legiōnāriōs dūcit aciemque instruit. Equitēs proelium committunt et, quoniam nūllum timentēs principēs hostis iter faciēbant, tōta auxilia rēgis perturbāta ac perterrita fugere cōgunt, māgnumque peditum numerum interficiunt. Equitātus fugā servātur, atque sē per lītus celeriter in oppidum recipit.

366.

The Gauls say that the plan of this messenger is a very good (one). They will make an attack upon the Romans while they are making[1] a march through the forest. They will first attack the auxiliary troops, whom they will easily be able to throw into confusion, so that these by their terror[1] may disturb the legionary troops.

2. The chiefs, sent[1] by king Juba, while they were marching[1] to Utica with many hundred horsemen and footmen, came in sight of the Romans, who were building the rampart of their camp. When attacked[1] by the Roman cavalry the horsemen fled along the shore to Utica.

LESSON LXI.

367. DEPONENT VERBS.

Deponent verbs are **passive** in **form,** but **active** in **meaning.**

Ūtor, *I use* (not, I am used).

Sequitur, *he follows* (not, he is followed).

There are deponent verbs belonging to each of the conjugations, but the more common ones are nearly all of the third conjugation.

368. Their conjugation differs from that of the passive of other verbs in two ways:

1. The **future infinitive** of deponent verbs is **active in form: cōnātūrus esse** (not cōnātum īrī).

2. Deponent verbs have the **participles** of **both voices:**

cōnāns, *trying.*
cōnātūrus, *about to try.*
cōnātus, *having tried.*
cōnandus, (gerundive).

a. Does 357, a, apply to deponent verbs?

[1] Use a participle.

THE ABLATIVE WITH SOME DEPONENTS.

369. There are **five** deponent verbs which, with their compounds, take **no** direct object in the **accusative case.** They **govern** the **ablative case** instead; thus,

Ūteris meō gladiō, *You are using my sword.*

Quis labōre nōn fruitur? *Who does not enjoy labor?*

370. RULE.--**Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,** and their compounds, govern the **ablative.**

371.

1. Ut facile eō cōnsiliō **ūtātur,** impedīmenta in locō idōneō relinquit.
2. Facile est tōtius Galliae imperiō potīri.
3. Ēius cōnsiliō **ūsī, proficīscī** temptāvērunt.
4. Tuō gladiō in impetū **ūsus est.**
5. Gladiis legiōnāriī nōn **ūtentur,** nē obsidēs vulnerentur.
6. Quis bonā fortūnā nōn fruitur?
7. In Ītaliam celeriter **profectus est.**
8. Mīlitem praedā fruī dīcit.
9. Mīlitēs, urbe potītī, etiam mulierēs et liberōs interfēcērunt.
10. Impedimentīs hostium potītī sumus, quoniam impetum nōn **sus-tinēre** potuērunt.
11. Laetissimī erant mīlitēs, quoniam urbe cum omnī praedā potīti erant.
12. Bellō dēfessus, in Ītaliam cum ūnā cohorte **proficīscī** contendit.
13. Caesar **proficīscēbātur** ut agmen hostis ā monte prohibērētur.
14. **Ūtī** equitātū temptābat, sed labōre equī dēfessī erant.
15. Quī **erant** hostium longius **profectī,** hōs levis armātūrae interfēcērunt.
16. Tandem cōnātus est Caesar opera per-ficere, ut impetum **sus-tinēret.**
17. Suō quisque cōnsiliō **ūtēbātur.**

18. Galba nūntium pauca locūtum loquī plūra prohibuit.

19. Eā quae secūta est hieme Usipetēs Germānī māgnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trāns-īvērunt, quoniam ā Suēbis complūrēs annōs premēbantur.

20. Eōdem diē ex urbe **proficīscitur** māgnīsque itineribus in Senonēs per-venit.

372. WORD-LIST.

ūtor ūtī, ūsus sum, (deponent) *to use.*

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, (deponent) *to set out, to go.*

sus-tineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentum, *to hold out against, sustain.*

373.

1. It was told to the lieutenant, as he was setting out with three cohorts, that the Gauls would assault him suddenly among the hills. Fearing that foot-soldiers would not be able to hold out against their attack, he gave horses to the soldiers of the cohorts, using the horses of the auxiliary troops.

2. Harassed during seven years by their enemies, they at length gained possession of a few ships, in order to come to their friends. But when their enemies learned that they were trying to make use of the ships which they had secured, they made an attack by night and captured them.

LESSON LXII.

THE DATIVE WITH INTRANSITIVES.

374. Sibi nocent, *They are injuring themselves.*

Mihi persuāsit ut eī crēderem, *He persuaded me to believe him.*

375. RULE.—Most verbs meaning to **favor, please, believe, trust, help,** and their **opposites;** also, to **persuade, command, obey, serve, resist,** and the like, are followed by the **dative.**

a. These verbs are **intransitive** (that is, admit only of an indirect object. Cp. 23). English transitive verbs (admitting a direct object) are often used to translate them.

b. Note that **cēdō** (*depart*), **cōnfīdō** (*trust in*), **cōnsulō** (*consult for*), **crēdō, cupiō** (*long for*), **īgnōscō** (*overlook*), **imperō, noceō, persuādeō, placeō** (*be pleasing*), **resistō** (*withstand*), and **studeō** (*be eager for*) are **intransitive.**

These verbs occur frequently in the writings of Caesar and Cicero.

376.

1. Nōbis **persuādet** ut amicōrum bonis ūtāmur.
2. Et sibi et **cīvitātī** nocēbit, si ab urbe proficiscētur.
3. Tē cum studiō sequēmur.
4. Istī nūntiō crēdere nōn possum.
5. Tibi ut veniās **persuādēbimus,** ut montēs videās.
6. **Cīvitātī persuāsit** ut ā terrā sua Caesarem omnibus cum cōpiis prohibērent. Hōc facilius eis **persuāsit,** quoniam novīs rēbus studērent (375, *b*).
7. In eō itinere **persuādet** Casticō ut imperium in **cīvitāte** suā occupet, quod pater ante habuit, Dumnorīgique Haeduō, fratrī Divitiācī, qui hōc tempore imperium in **cīvitāte** obtinuit, ut idem temptet **persuādet.**
8. **Persuādent** hīs **cīvitātibus** ut, eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, cum iis proficiscantur.

377. WORD-LIST.

persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsus, *to persuade.* Followed by the subjunctive with **ut** or **nē** (279).

cīvitās, cīvitātis, f., *a state* or *nation.*

378.

1. Because the land of the Helvetians is hemmed in on all sides by very high mountains, Orgetorix easily persuaded the chiefs of this state to believe[1] that their land was too small, and that they, making use of their numerous soldiery, would be able to seize quickly the finest fields of Gaul.

[1] **crēdere.** Not infinitive.

2. The legate sent two men to the chief, who told him, "The Romans ask[1] you to come[2] to them in order that they may make use of your skill in war." He believed them, so that they were easily able to persuade him to set out,[2] having only[3] three hundred of his own men with him. The Romans attacked him in a suitable place, as he was making the journey, and killed him.

LESSON LXIII.

THE IRREGULAR VERBS VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ.

Principal Parts: { **volō, velle, voluī.** / **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī [nē-volō].** / **mālō, mālle, māluī [magis-volō].**

379. Learn the conjugation of **volō, nōlō** and **mālō** (487).

380.

1. **Vult** venire. Dīxit sē **velle** venīre.
2. **Nōluit sequī.** Dīcunt sē **nōlle sequī.**
3. **Vīs** proficīscī. Cōgnōscimus tē **velle sequī.**
4. Aliōrum bonīs fruī mālumus quam nostrīs ūtī.
5. **Nōluistī** audīre.
6. Accidit ut ad illam cīvitātem venīre **vellet.**
7. Dīcitur eum hōc dōnum illō māluisse.
8. **Volentēs** aut **nōlentēs** impetum facient.
9. Dīcunt sē **voluisse** Caesarem **sequī.**
10. Māvult re-dūcī.
11. Nōn **vultis** aciem īnstruī.
12. **Nōlī** perterrērī.
13. Agmen exercitūs **sequēminī.**
14. **Nōlīte** persuādērī.
15. Agmen Gallōrum cum equitātū **sequēbātur.**
16. **Vultis**ne mē eōdem tempore venīre?
17. Mālumus tē ā-futūram esse.

[1] **petere.** [2] Not infinitive (279). [3] **tantum.**

18. **Volam** ad-esse, sed ille superiōre tempore **nōluit** quemquam praeter vōs vestrumque patrem ad-esse. Timeō nē mē venīre **nōlit.**

Nōlumus illum vidēre nisi tē ad-esse **voluerit.**

381. WORD LIST.

volō, velle, voluī, *to be willing, to wish.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *to be unwilling.*
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum (deponent), *to follow.*

382.

1. He was informed that this lieutenant would follow another, but was unwilling to lead the line of march himself (341, 346).
2. He wished to set out for Italy, but could not (do so).
3. He prefers to attack the winter camp by night, but his soldiers have said that they are unwilling to follow him (341, 346).
4. We were unwilling to follow you, for you did not give us the grain in the fields.
5. Do you not wish us to use (370) the things which you gave us?
6. I can use two swords at the same time, but he is unable to use even[1] one (370).

LESSON LXIV.

383. EXAMPLES.

Cum mīlitēs in castra vēnērunt, lēgātus eōs hortātus est, *When the soldiers came into camp, the legate encouraged them.*

Cum bellum perfectum erit, Rōmam veniam, *When the war is (shall have been) finished, I will go to Rome.*

[1] **etiam.**

Cum mīlitēs in castra venīrent, Gallī eōs oppūgnāvērunt, *While the soldiers were coming into the camp the Gauls attacked them.*

Cum oppidum captum esset, Massiliam contendit, *When the town had been captured he hastened to Massilia.* Cum, *when* (or Temporal).

a. Notice the moods and tenses of the verbs in the **cum** clauses.

384. RULE.—**Cum**, meaning *when*, is followed by the **subjunctive**, if the tense is the **imperfect** or **pluperfect**; **otherwise**, by the **indicative.**

385.

1. Cum barbarī proelium committere peterent, princeps ūnum ex hostibus tēlō vulnerāvit.

2. Mīlitēs cum oppidum cēpērunt, omnēs hominēs interfēcērunt.

3. Mīlitēs cum oppidum cēpissent, omnēs hominēs interfēcērunt.

4. Cum ad eum centuriōnem dūcerem, multa dīxit.

5. Lēgātus nūntiō duce ūsus exercitum per silvās dūxit.

6. Equitēs, cum lēgātus aciem īnstrueret, eī hostem prope esse nūntiāvērunt.

7. Lēgātō īnstruentī aciem equitēs id nūntiāvērunt.

8. Lēgātus, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, complūrēs equitēs prae-mīsit.

9. Cum Caesar per extrēmōs Lingonum fīnēs iter faceret, circiter mīlia passuum decem ā Rōmānīs tribus in castrīs Vercingetorix suās cōpiās constituit, et equitum ducibus nūntiat vēnisse tempus victōriae.

10. Sīgnum dat et ā dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū cōdem tempore Aeduōs mittit.

11. Cum in Ītaliam proficiscerētur Caesar, Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs aliāsque cīvitātēs mīsit, quae ā fīnibus Allobrogum ad summās Alpēs pertinent.

12. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum mīlibus duodecim ab-esset, ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt.

13. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent atque ūnā ex parte castrōrum equitēs ē-missī hostibus superiōrēs fuissent, hī suōs redūxērunt.

386.

1. He gave me this gift when he set out from Rome.

2. When the twelfth legion shall have seized the hill, he will make the attack with the greatest eagerness.

3. When he saw that he would not be able to take the town, he placed a camp in a suitable position.

4. When he came to see me he gave me this sword.

5. When he came to me he persuaded me to give (378, N. 1) him a greater (228) number of troops than you had yourself (222).

6. They all set out when there was much grain in the fields.

7. When they had collected a large number of men they hastened to Aduatuca.

8. When he saw you he said that it was you who had tried[1] to wound his foot with your javelin in the battle (341, 346).

LESSON LXV.

387. REVIEW SENTENCES.

1. Dīcit sēsē ad eum venīre nōluisse.

2. Mīlitēs equitēsque dūxit ut eōs quī fūgerant per-sequerētur.

3. Aristium, tribūnum mīlitum, iter ad legiōnem facientem ex oppidō Gallī ē-dūcunt.

4. Libō, profectus ab Oricō cum classe longārum nāvium quīnquāgintā, Brundisium vēnit.

5. Petit ut ipse cum Pompēiō conloquātur.

[1] Pluperfect subjunctive.

6. Lībō ad Pompēium proficiscitur.

7. Saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat.

8. His dē rēbus Caesar certior factus, ipse cum prīmum per anni tempus potuit ad exercitum contendit.

9. Dixit Rōmānōs nūllam facultātem habēre nāvium.

10. Hostēs proeliō superātī cum sē ex fugā recēpērunt ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt. Cum his lēgātis Commius vēnit, quem dixeram ā Caesare in Brittaniam praemissum esse.

11. Equitēs nostrī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī in silvam ad suōs reciperent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius sequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex ad collem vēnērunt ubi castra ponere Caesar constituerat. Cum prima impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab iis, quī in silvā erant, vīsa sunt, subitō omnibus cōpiis ad nostra castra in eōs quī in opere occupātī sunt contendērunt.

388.

The Gauls captured the tribune while he, having set out with the two cohorts which he was leading, was marching to attack (378, N. 1) three hundred of the enemy who had fled into the forests. They led him and his soldiers, after he had been captured, to the gate[1] of the camp from which he had set out, and there killed them, in order that the Romans who had been left in the camp might be terrified.

The Romans who were in the camp, when they saw that the Gauls had killed the tribune and all of the soldiers whom they had captured, fearing lest they themselves would be overcome, on the following night hastened through (166, N. 2) the forest to the winter camp of the legate. The Gauls upon the next day carried all that the soldiers had left in the camp (away) from it to their own homes (420, 472).

[1] porta.

LESSON LXVI.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

389. EXAMPLES.

Suī dēfendendī causā id fēcit, *He did this for the sake of defending himself.*

Gerundive.

Operam dat oppidīs expūgnandīs, *He devotes himself to taking towns by storm (to towns to be taken by storm).*

Vēnit ad bellum gerendum, *He came to wage war (for war to be waged).*

Multa dē mūniendīs castrīs dīxit, *He said many things about fortifying camps (about camps to be fortified).*

a. The **Gerundive** is a **verbal adjective.** It is called an **adjective** because it **agrees** with its noun in **gender, number** and **case,** as in the sentences above. It is a **verbal** adjective because it expresses **action.**

390. Causā urbem videndī venient, *They will come for the sake of seeing the city.*

Gerund.

Mulī ūtilēs sunt impedīmenta portandō, *Mules are useful for carrying baggage.*

Victōria oppidum expūgnandō eī erat, *Victory was his by storming the town.*

a. The **Gerund** is a **verbal noun,** of the **neuter** gender, and used only in the **singular.** It takes a direct object. It is the same in meaning as the gerundive.

b. The Nominative case is wanting in the gerund.

The **infinitive** is used instead, thus :

Cēdere est turpe, *To yield is disgraceful.*

391. EXAMPLES.

Facultātēs habent { **oppidī capiendī,** / **oppidum capiendī,** } *They have resources for (of) taking the town.*

a. In the two ways of expressing this sentence, which uses the gerundive?

392. Dīcit omnēs Galliae cōpiās ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse, *He says that all the troops of Gaul came to attack him (to him [a man who was] to be attacked).* **Purpose Clauses.**

See also 389, third sentence.

a. Notice that **ad** with the **gerundive** or **gerund** is used to express **purpose.** In what other ways may purpose be expressed?

393.

1. Cōnsilium urbem capiendī nūntiāvit.
2. Cōnsilium urbis capiendae nūntiāvit.
3. Veniunt ad urbem videndam.
4. Neque cōnsilī habendī neque arma capiendī facultās datur.
5. Complūra dicendō eīs persuādet.
6. Ad urbem capiendam labōrem dat.
7. Labōrandī causā ad vallum properāvit.
8. Caesar ab urbe proficiscitur atque in ulteriōrem Galliam pervenit, ubi cōgnōscit missum esse in Hispāniam ā Pompēiō Rūfum, quem paucīs ante diēbus captum ipse dīmīserat.
9. Dīxit profectum esse Domitium ad occupandam Massiliam nāvibus septem.
10. In praedā capiendā hostibus nocet.
11. Dīcit Carnūtēs interficiendī eōrum prīncipis cōnsilium captūrōs esse.
12. Studiō eōrum futūram esse aliquam pūgnandī facultātem existimāvit.

13. Aliquem prīncipum quōs sēcum ad cōnsilium capiendum habēbat mīsit.

14. Gallī ad nōs interficiendōs contendunt.

15. Tribūnus suīs rem dē mittendīs lēgātīs nūntiat.

16. Primō mīlitēs videndī causā laetī ex castrīs ex-īvērunt.

17. Ipsī per-ficiendī operis causā longius proficiscuntur.

18. Lēgātōs monet ut contineant mīlitēs nē studiō pūgnandī aut spē praedae longius proficiscantur.

19. Signum recipiendī dedit.

20. Ad salūtem obtinendam pūgnābunt.

394. (Translate where possible in two ways.)

1. He has very great resources (396) for waging war.

2. He wishes you to give him the opportunity to see (of seeing) the city.

3. He announces a plan for capturing the baggage.

4. He was kept from making an attack upon the wall by lack of javelins.

5. She takes (uses) too much time in preparing food.[1]

LESSON LXVII.

READING LESSONS.

395. CURIŌ IN ĀFRICĀ.—III.

Proximā nocte centuriōnēs duo ex castrīs Curiōnis cum legiōnāriīs duo et vīginti ad Vārum fugiunt. Hī eī nūntiant quam forsitan habuērunt opīniōnem; dīcunt tōtum exercitum Curiōnis nūllum pūgnandī studium habēre, māximumque opus esse in cōnspectum exercitūs ēius venīre et dīcendī mīlitibus **facultātem** dare.

Erat in exercitū Vārī Quīntilius, quī in Ītaliā sē suāsque cōpiās Caesarī in dēditiōnem dederat. Hīc dī-missus ā Caesare in Āfricam vēnerat, **quod** bellum gerendī **facultātem** petēbat, **legiōnēsque** eās tradūxerat Curiō quās superiōribus tempori-

[1] cibus, -ī.

bus ex eō recēperat Caesar. Hōc virō ad rem gerendam Vārus ūtitur.

Centuriōnum opiniōne ad-ductus Vārus posterō diē legiōnēs ex castris ē-dūcit, **quod** Quintiliō **facultātem** dicendī dare vult. Facit idem Curiō, **quod** Vārus proelium committendī **facultātem** dare vidētur, atque suās uterque cōpiās instruit. Hāc **facultāte** dicendī ūsus, Quintilius aciem Curiōnis circumīvit atque legiōnāriis dixit, "Primam sacrāmentī, quod apud mē dixistis, memoriam dē-ponere atque bellum gerere nōlīte contrā eōs quī eādem fortūnā ūsī sumus. Sī mē atque Vārum sequēminī complūra dōna vōbīs dabimus."

Sed nūllam in partem ab exercitū Curiōnis haec eō tempore grāta vidēbantur, atque ita suās uterque cōpiās re-dūxit.

Curiō dixit, "Cum primum pūgnandī **facultās** erit data, proeliō rem committam." Posterō diē cōpiās productās eōdem locō quō superiōribus diēbus instrūxerat, in aciē conlocāvit. Vārus quoque cum pūgnandī studiō suās cōpiās prōdūxit. Erat vallis inter duās aciēs, nōn ita māgna, sed difficilī ascēnsū. Subitō ā sinistrō cornū Vārī equitātus omnis atque multae levis armātūrae cum sē in vallem dē-mitterent vidēbantur. Ad hōs Curiō equitātum et duās cohortēs mīsit, quōrum primum impetum equitēs Vārī nōn sustinuērunt, sed celeriter ad suōs fūgērunt. Levis armātūrae, relictae, circumventae sunt ā nostrīs atque interfectae sunt.

Ita omnēs quī erant tōtā in aciē Vārī suōs perterritōs fugere vidēbant. Tum Rebilus, lēgātus Caesaris quem Curiō sēcum ex Siciliā dūxerat **quod** eum māgnum cōnsilium in bellum gerendō habēre **exīstimābat**, "Perterritum," dixit, "hostem vidēs, Curiō! Cūr ita secundō tempore ūtī nōn vīs?" Curiō signum dedit, et in vallem aciem dūxit. Difficilis mīlitibus ascēnsus vallis erat, sed Vārī mīlitēs, fugā suōrum perterritī, nihil dē sēsē dēfendendō **exīstimābant**. **Quod** omnes mīlitēs Vārī sē ab equitātū circum-venīrī **exīstimāvērunt** fugā sē in castra recipere contendunt.

Quā in fugā Fabius, quīdam mīles ex exercitū Curiōnis prīmum agmen fugientium secūtus "Vāre! Vāre!" appellābat,

ut ā Vārō ūnus esse ex ēius mīlitibus et monēre aliquid velle **exīstimārētur**. Cum ille saepius appellātus stetit ut eī dīceret, umerum gladiō vulnerāre Fabius temptāvit, quod perīculum ille scūtō vix vītāvit. Fabius ā proximīs mīlitibus circum-ventus interfectus est.

Hāc fugientium multitūdine portae castrōrum occupantur atque iter impeditur, plūrēsque in eō locō sine vulnere quam in proeliō aut fugā interfectī sunt. Tamen Curiō castra nōn oppūgnāre temptāvit, **quod** sē natūrā locī prohibērī **exīstimāvit**. Exercitum in sua castra redūxit.

Nostrōrum nūllus mīles praeter Fabium interfectus est: ex numerō hostium sexcentī interfectī atque mīlle vulnerātī sunt.

396. WORD-LIST.

facultās, facultātis, f., *ability, opportunity.* Plural also, *resources.*

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *to suppose, think.*

quod, *because.*

397.

1. By chance three hostages were wounded by the frightened (359) horsemen.
2. He is afraid that the footman has wounded your foot with his sword (353).
3. The soldiers, tired out by the long march, were unable to defend themselves, and were killed while trying to retreat (359).
4. He is unwilling that you should give help to his son.
5. Bibulus stationed the ships of the fleet along[1] the whole[2] shore, so that Caesar was unable for a long time to obtain more troops.
6. He refused to flee, saying that it was better to be killed (341, 346).

[1] **per.** [2] **tōtus, -a, -um.**

7. This is a good plan for carrying on the war, but that is a better (one).

8. He wishes her to follow him to Rome, but she is unwilling to leave her son.

9. The messenger said that the cohorts had occupied the top of the mountain for two days (341, 346).

10. The people went[1] to see the army as it was setting out (279, 359).

11. They will not have time to lead (of leading) the cohorts to the hill.

12. This is a very suitable spot[2] for placing a camp.

13. It was reported to Caesar that this chief had persuaded many of the Gauls to make war (378, N. 1).

14. Is the soldier able to use this javelin?

15. When fifty-five had been killed, the rest gave their chief as a hostage.

LESSON LXVIII.

398. THE DATIVE OF END OR SERVICE.

Legiōnem tibi praesidiō dat, *He gives the legion to you as a guard (for a defence).*

Peditēs auxiliō mittit, *He sends foot-soldiers as a reinforcement.*

Notice that **praesidiō** and **auxiliō** denote the end or purpose which **legiōnem** and **peditēs** serve.

Notice in the first sentence that the same sentence may contain a dative of service and an indirect object. **Dative of End or Service.**

399. RULE.—The **end** or **purpose** which an object serves may be denoted by the **dative.**

a. Often a second dative is used, to denote the person or thing affected, as **castrīs** in the following sentence:

Cōpiās praesidiō castrīs relinquet, *He will leave troops as a guard for the camp.* (Cp. 20, *c.*)

[1] īvit. [2] 230.

400. RULE.—Many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub,** and **super** are followed by the **dative.** Dative with Compounds.

a. These verbs are **intransitive,** that is, they do not take a direct object. The **dative** which follows them is an **indirect object** (23).

b. All of the compounds of **sum** govern the **dative,** excepting **possum** (486) and **ab-sum.**

c. **Prae-ficiō** takes both a **dative** and an **accusative** (cp. e.g. 401, 11, 17).

d. **Prae-mittō** does not come under this rule.

401.

1. Māgnās cōpiās praesidiō nāvibus reliquit.
2. Brittanī perturbātī hunc tōtī bellō prae-fēcerant.
3. Caesar eōs praesidiō utrīsque castrīs reliquit.
4. Id sī facient māgnō cum periculō nostrīs erit.
5. Ūna rēs erat māgnō ūsuī nostrīs.
6. Hīs prae-erat Viridovix.
7. Cum nox oppūgnandī fīnem fēcisset, Rēmus, quī oppidō prae-fuerat, nūntium ad Caesarem mīsit, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse. Nocte Caesar, iīsdem ducibus ūsus, qui nūntii ā Rēmō vēnerant, sagittāriōs auxiliō mīsit.
8. Ad flūmen partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō,[1] ut aut castellum, cuī prae-erat Titurius, expūgnārent[2] aut agrōs Rēmōrum occupārent, quī māgnō ūsuī nōbīs ad bellum gerendum erant.
9. Māgnō ūsuī ei erit sī loca, flūmina, silvās cōgnōscet.
10. Hōc periculō ducī Caesar equitātum auxiliō dedit.
11. Omnem equitātum prae-mīsit. Hīs Cottam lēgātum prae-fēcit.
12. Brūtus classī prae-erat.
13. Illī, cum iīs cohortibus quae, praesidiō castrīs relictae, nōn dēfessae labōre erant, celeriter ad eum locum pervēnērunt.
14. Ut nāves longae parvum spatium ab onerāriīs nāvibus conlocārentur imperāvit, quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit.

[1] 89. [2] *take by storm.*

15. Id cum cōgnitum est, Crassus, quī equitātuī prae-erat, tertiam aciem auxiliō nostris labōrantibus mīsit.

16. Omnia dē erant quae ad impetum faciendum erant ūsuī.

17. Caesar in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dūxit: hībernis Labiēnum prae-fēcit.

402.

1. Caesar placed other legates over the fifth legion.
2. The cohort was (for) a protection to the baggage.
3. They sent the footmen as an aid to the cohorts.
4. The weapons were of great use to me (401, 5).
5. The legate who commands these legions has persuaded Caesar to place[1] you over the cavalry.
6. Of what use are these hostages?
7. The Germans (401, 10) were a great help to Caesar.
8. He sent forward the cavalry, but hastened himself to the nearest hill to defend[1] the baggage there.
9. These javelins will be (for) a great help to us in attacking the town.
10. He is unable to persuade me to hurry[1] to the city.

LESSON LXIX.

403.

Hoste oppūgnante, fūgērunt, { *The enemy attacking,* / *When the enemy attacked,* / *Because the enemy attacked,* } *they fled.*

Datō sīgnō, proelium commīsit, { *The signal having been given,* / *When the signal had been given,* / *Because the signal had been given,* / (*Having given the signal*), } *he began the battle.*

[1] Not infinitive.

Multīs obsidibus ad Caesarem ā Gallīs missīs, pācem fēcit, *When many hostages had been sent (many hostages having been sent) by the Gauls to Caesar, he made peace.*

Antōniō lēgātō, vincēmus, { *Antony being legate, If Antony be legate, Since Antony will be legate,* } *we will conquer.*

a. In these sentences notice that **oppūgnante, datō** and **missīs** are participles in the ablative case, agreeing with the nouns **hoste, signō** and **obsidibus** respectively.

b. Notice that this union of **noun** and **participle** in the **ablative** makes a **complete clause,** which can be translated in various ways in English.

c. Notice that either noun or participle may have **modifying words** dependent upon them, as **multīs, ad Caesarem** and **ā Gallīs** in the third sentence. **Ablative Absolute.**

d. There is no participle in the last sentence. This is because the verb **sum** has no present participle.

e. This construction of the participle with a noun is grammatically **independent** of the rest of the sentence, like a parenthesis in English. Hence it is called the **Ablative Absolute.**

f. The noun or pronoun in the ablative in this construction cannot refer to the subject or object of the main verb of the sentence.

g. The ablative absolute is a common construction with the perfect passive participle. Can you see any reason why? (Cp. 357, *a.*)

404.

1. Nāvibus complūribus factīs, classem sequī **cōnātī sunt.**

2. Ibi Ceutronēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, ex itinere exercitum prohibēre **cōnantur.**

3. Complūribus proeliis gestis in **fīnēs** Vocontiōrum pervēnit.

4. Hōc proeliō factō trāns flūmen exercitum trādūcit.

5. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs per **fīnēs** Sēquanōrum equitātum trādūcere **cōnātus est,** obsidēsque eis dedit.

6. Eā rē permissā ex **fīnibus** suīs in silvās fugere **cōnābantur.**

7. Eō conciliō dīmissō principēs cum Caesare **loquī** voluērunt.

8. Obsidibus datīs in eōrum **fīnēs** tamen equitātum dūcere **cōnābantur.**

9. Rē frūmentāriā parātā māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

10. Occupātō oppidō ibi legiōnāriōs conlocat.

11. Caesar **loquendī fīnem** facit sēque ad suōs recipit.

12. Proelium nōn committēbat, nē superātīs hostibus dicī posset eōs ab sē in conloquiō circumventōs esse.

405. WORD-LIST.

fīnis, fīnis, m., *limit, end.* Plural, *borders,* hence, *country, land.*

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus (deponent), *to attempt, try.*

loquor, loquī, locūtus (deponent), *to speak, say.*

406. (Where possible use the Ablative Absolute in these sentences.)

1. When the line had been drawn up, he began the battle.

2. When this hill had been seized, he tried to capture the next.

3. After the camp had been placed, he sent his cavalry to the fields.

4. When this thing had been done, he prepared to make an attack.

5. Since four messengers had been sent, he did not send more.

6. He attacked the enemy while they were preparing to flee (359).

7. When hostages had been given he set out for Italy.

8. Having learned this, he hastened to Rome.

9. When we have waged this war all Gaul will have been overcome.

10. With Caesar as leader what can we fear?

11. The hostages who have been given by the Gauls are the children of chiefs.

12. Having followed the enemy, he began battle.

LESSON LXX.

407. Review carefully 274–277.

408. The tenses of the **Indicative** which denote **present** or **future** time (the **Present, Future,** and **Future Perfect**) are called **primary tenses.**

The tenses of the **Indicative** which denote **past** time (the **Imperfect, Perfect** and **Pluperfect**) are called **secondary tenses.**

Primary and Secondary Tenses.

409. The rule given in 277 can be restated thus:

A **primary tense** in the main clause is followed by the **present subjunctive.**

A **secondary tense** in the main clause is followed by the **imperfect subjunctive.**

Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

410. EXAMPLES.

Timeō ut nūntium mīserit, *I am afraid that he did not send the messenger.*

Timēbam ut nūntium mīsisset, *I was afraid that he had not sent the messenger.*

a. Notice that the subjunctives in these sentences represent their action as completed at the time denoted by the main verbs.

b. Notice that the primary tense **timeō** is followed by the Perfect Subjunctive, and the secondary tense **timēbam** by the pluperfect subjunctive.

c. The **perfect** and **pluperfect** tenses of the **subjunctive** have the **same meaning.** They denote **completed action.**

Full Rule for Sequence of Tenses. See 411.

411. RULE.—A **primary** tense in the main clause is followed by the **present** or **perfect subjunctive.**

A **secondary** tense in the main clause is followed by the **imperfect** or **pluperfect subjunctive.**

412. EXAMPLES.

Dīcit cum vēnerit tē ēdere, *He says that you were eating when he came.*

Dīxit cum vēnisset tē ēdere, *He said that you were eating when he came.*

Dīcit cum veniat tē laetum futūrum esse, *He says that you will be glad when he comes.*

Dīxit cum venīret tē laetum futūrum esse, *He said that you would be glad when he came.*

a. The **cum** clauses in these sentences are in the indirect statement, since they are a part of what is quoted, but are in subordinate clauses, since they are introduced by the subordinate particle **cum,** and hence their verbs cannot be put in the infinitive (341).

b. Notice that their verbs (**vēnerit, vēnisset, veniat, venīret**) are in the **subjunctive,** and follow the rule for sequence of tenses (411).

413. RULE.—The **main verb** of an **indirect statement** is put in the **infinitive,** with subject **accusative,** and depends upon the verb or expression of **saying, thinking** or **perceiving.** Full Rule for Indirect Statements.

The **Subordinate clauses** of an indirect statement have their verbs in the **subjunctive,** and conform to the rule for the sequence of tenses.

414. THE APPEAL OF DIVITIACUS.

Divitiacus Haeduus Caesarī ita locūtus est; Cīvitātem Haeduōrum armis contendisse cum Germānīs quōs cīvitās Sēquanōrum auxiliō trāns Rhēnum flūmen trādūxisset. Superātōs, quī suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī amīcitiā plūrimum

ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare, ut suā cīvitās ā populō Rōmānō auxilium nōn peteret. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuisset, ut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte fūgisse et Rōmam vēnisse ut auxilium peteret, quod sōlus nōn obsidibus tenērētur.

Sed pēius victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs ac-cidisse, quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, tertiam partem agrī eōrum, quī esset optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvisset et nunc alteram partem tertiam occupāre vellet, quod Germānōrum mīlia hominum quattuor et vigintī ad eum vēnissent, quibus locum parāret. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs ut omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trāns-īrent.[1] Caesarem sōlum Galliam omnem ab Ariovistō posse dēfendere.

415.

1. Caesar said that he gave the opportunity of beginning battle to Ariovistus when the line of battle had been drawn up, but that the latter restrained his men from battle, because he did not think the time a suitable one.

2. He learned that the council of the Gauls had been held[2] for many years at this place.

3. When his soldiers were pressed for want of water, he persuaded them to send him[3] as an envoy to Caesar.

4. They defended this region with the greatest courage, so that the enemy were not able even[4] to seize the grain in the fields (309).

5. Turn 414 from **Sed pēius** to the end into a direct statement.

[1] Imperfect subjunctive. Cp. 488. [2] **habeō**. [3] Not infinitive. [4] **etiam**.

LESSON LXXI.

THE IRREGULAR VERB EŌ, *go.*

Principal Parts, **eō, īre, īvī** (**iī**), (**itūrus**).

416. Learn the conjugation of **eō** (488).

417. EXAMPLES.

Ex castrīs profectus est, *He set out from the camp.*

Populus frūmentō caruit, *The people were in want of grain.*

Equī aquā prīvātī sunt ut mīlitēs biberent, *The horses were deprived of water in order that the soldiers might drink.*

Notice that in the last two sentences the idea of separation or privation (expressed in the first by **ex**) is expressed by the ablatives **frūmentō** and **aquā** without a preposition.

418. RULE.—**Separation** is expressed by the **ablative,** often without a preposition. **Ablative of Separation.**

419.

1. Frūmentum ut quisque **domō** ex-portāret imperāvērunt.
2. Dīxit Haeduīs sē redditūrum obsidēs nōn esse.
3. Erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus **domō** ex-īre possent.
4. Octāvius, cum **iīs** quās habēbat nāvibus, Salonās pervēnit. Cīvēs cum nōn perterrēre posset, oppidum oppūgnāre cōnātus est. Complūribus interfectis Octāvius Dyrrhachium sēsē ad Pompēium recēpit.
5. Multōs dies terrā prohibitus, tandem cum classe ex-iit.
6. Tigurīnī, cum **domō** ex-issent, patrum nostrōrum memoriā Pīsōnem lēgātum interfēcerant.
7. Ille Oricum proficīscitur. Tum subitō Apollōniam it. Stabērius Apollōniā, quī huic oppidō prae-erat, fūgit.
8. Equitibus per lītus conlocātis, Antōnius aquā classem prohibēbat.

9. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōres, ūna quam **domō** sēcum dūxerat, altera quae Suēba natiōne erat.

10. Proeliō abs-tinēbat.

11. Ariovistus milibus passuum duōbus ultrā Caesarem castra fēcit, eō cōnsiliō, ut frūmentō eum prohibēret. Caesar, nē diūtius frūmentō prohibērētur, ultrā illum alia castra posuit.

12. Quod, omne frūmentō ā-missō, in suā terrā nihil est, Allobrogibus imperat ut iīs frūmenti cōpiam faciant.

13. Calēnus, legiōnibus in nāvēs im-positīs, nāvēs solvit.

14. Hī cum essent ex terrā Ēpīri vīsī, Copōnius, quī classī prae-erat, nāvēs suās Dyrrhachiō ē-dūxit.

420. WORD-LIST.

domus, domūs, (**domī**), f., *house, home* (472).

421.

1. He told me that he was going home[1] (413).

2. He wished you to go with us.

3. When he left home he first went to see you (384).

4. We are going to the river to bring (279) water (back) home.[1]

5. He will attempt to keep the Romans out of his country.

6. He said that he would not begin battle, since the army of the other legate had retreated (413).

7. They said that they were unable to persuade the Allobroges to keep[2] their men from battle.

8. Marcus says that he surpasses all other men in bravery (194).

9. Kept[2] from (securing) grain for a long time, he at length went away.

10. He is collecting many things suitable for waging war (20, *c*, 389–392).

[1] 360, *c*. [2] 419, 5.

LESSON LXXII.

422. Read again 278, 279, 308, 309.

When the **subject** of a verb in a subordinate clause denoting **purpose** (or **result**) is **different** from the **subject** of the **main verb** of the sentence, **quī** (and not **ut**) introduces the subordinate clause.

Lēgātus Galbam mittit, quī locī nātūram cōgnōscat, *The legate sends Galba, who is to find out the nature of the place;* or, *The legate sends Galba to find out the nature of the place.*

Subjunctive in Relative Clauses.

Mārcus hominem mīsit quī cōgnōsceret, *Marcus sent a man who should find out.*

Mārcus hominem mīsit ut cōgnōsceret, *Marcus sent a man in order that he (himself, Marcus) might find out.*

The last two sentences illustrate the distinction between **quī** and **ut.**

423. When a clause introduced by a relative pronoun denotes **cause,** its verb is put in the **subjunctive.**

Fortissimus erat Mārcus, quī trēs Gallōs cēpisset, *Marcus was very brave, who captured three Gauls (for he captured three Gauls).*

424. Sometimes relative clauses other than those just described have the verb in the subjunctive.

a. This is usually the case when the antecedent is **indefinite** (as, **aliquis,** *anyone*) or general, (as, **omnia,** *all things*). In such a case it is evidently the purpose of the relative clause to define or **characterize the antecedent.**

Hominem videō quī sit caecus, *I see a man who is blind.*

Hōc nūntiāvit cuīdam quī esset meus amīcus, *He told this to one who is my friend.*

b. From this fact all such clauses are called **clauses of characteristic.**

425. RULE.—**Relative** clauses of **purpose, result, cause,** and **characteristic** take the **subjunctive.**

426. EXAMPLES.

Cum obsidēs dedissent, pūgnāre nōluērunt, *Since they had given hostages, they refused to fight.*

Cum paucī sint, tamen pūgnābunt, *Although they are few, still they will fight.*

427. RULE.—**Cum,** when it means *since* or *although,* is used with the **subjunctive.** Cum Causal or Concessive.

428.

1. Equitātum omnem prae-mittit, quī videant quas in partēs hostēs iter faciant.
2. Hominem quī nātūram montis cognōsceret mīsit.
3. Equitātum quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīserat.
4. Quō aqua portārī posset nihil erat relictum.
5. Lēgātus erat māgnā virtūte, quī interfici quam exercitū ā-missō salūtem petere māllet.
6. Haec cum ita sint fugā salūtem petet.
7. Nūllus mīles erat quī equitātum rēgis Iubae nōn timēret.
8. Nōn is sum quī proeli perīculō perterrear.
9. Tum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppūgnāret, mīsit.
10. Duās legiōnēs in interiōrem Galliam quī dūceret lēgātum mīsit.
11. Quis est quī hōc facere audeat?
12. Sōlī centum erant quī portās dēfendere possent.
13. Hunc lēgātum Caesar dōnum iūdicāverat quem mitteret.
14. Haec arma cui dabō, cum nēminem alium praeter tē videam?
15. Ibi partem suōrum mīlitum relīquērunt quī essent quī cum hoste pūgnārent.

16. Primōs quī flūmen trāns-ierant nostrō equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.

17. Caesar, aciē instrūctā, equitātum mittit quī hostium impetum sustineat.

18. Multī erant quī hiberna oppūgnāre vellent.

429.

1. He will send a horseman to inform [1] the legate.

2. What soldier was there who did not wish to attack the enemy?

3. A hill that is high can be easily defended.

4. A camp which is placed upon the top of a hill cannot be easily captured.

5. Although the Gauls had fled to the forests, he hastened to depart from their country.

6. He wishes to see some one who will tell him about [2] this matter.

7. What high hill is there in this region, which we can easily defend?

8. He thinks that this mountain is much higher than that (222).

9. Although the Gauls have given many hostages to the Germans, they fear that the latter will send another army to attack them (353).

10. He says that he will not fight with a man who is smaller than he (is) (413).

LESSON LXXIII.

THE IRREGULAR VERBS FERŌ AND FĪŌ.

Principal Parts: { **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.** / **fīō, fierī, factus sum.**

430. Learn the conjugation of **ferō** and **fīō** (489, 490).

a. **Fīō** is used as the passive of **faciō** (except in some compounds).

b. The **i** is long except when followed by **-er** and in **fit.**

[1] Not infinitive. [2] **dē.**

431.

1. **Learn to unite**

A **genitive** with the **nearest** noun or pronoun.

A **preposition** with its noun. The noun **follows** the preposition.

Adjectives with words in the same cases.

The **infinitive,** if **not** following a verb of saying, thinking, etc., with the nearest **following** indicative or subjunctive (155); if following a verb of saying, thinking, etc., with this verb, translating it as the main verb of the quotation, (i.e. the verb introduced in English by "that." Cp. 413).

2. As regards nouns and adjectives, think of the commoner forms and constructions first. Learn to think of

Hints for Reading.

A **nominative** as a **subject.**

The **endings -m, -ōs, -ās** as denoting the **object.**

The **ending -a** as denoting, first, the **object** in the accusative neuter plural; then, the **nominative** neuter plural, or else, the nominative singular feminine.

The **ending -ā** as denoting the **ablative** feminine.

An **ablative**, if **alone,** as denoting **cause** or **means.**

An **adjective** standing **alone** (or a **pronoun** standing alone) in the nominative or accusative as referring, if masculine, to people; if neuter, to things.

The **endings -īs,** and **-ibus** as first, the ablative, and then, the dative.

432. CURIŌ IN ĀFRICĀ.—IV.

Posterō diē Curiō vallum circum Uticam dūcere parāvit. Multitūdine in oppidō perterritā dē deditiōne omnēs iam loquēbantur, et cum Vārō gerēbant, nē hōc bellō omnium fortūnās perturbārī vellet. Haec cum loquērentur nūntii prae-missī ab Iubā rēge vēnērunt, quī locūti sunt illum celeriter venīre cum māgnīs cōpiīs. Nūntiābantur haec eadem Curiōnī, sed quod iam Caesaris rēs secundae[1] in Āfricā nūn-

[1] Caesar's successes against Afranius.

tiātae erant, nihil contrā sē rēgem factūrum esse existimābat.

Sed cum certīs nūntiīs Curiō cōgnōscit minus quinque et viginti milibus passuum longē ab Uticā Iubae rēgis cōpiās abesse, relictīs castrīs sēsē in Castra Cornēlia rūrsus recipit. Ad hunc locum frūmentum portāre castraque conlocāre cōnstituit, atque in Siciliam mittit, ut duae legiōnēs reliquusque equitātus ad sē mittātur. Castra haec erant ad bellum dūcendum aptissima natūrā locī et aquae salisque cōpiā et quod ad lītus erant. Itaque Curiō reliquās cōpiās exspectāre et bellum dūcere cōnstituit.

433.

1. While Caesar was waging war in Spain, Curio was fighting in Africa.
2. This was announced to him while he was speaking to his friends in the council.
3. Since the cavalry had become terrified, the legionary soldiers were unable to hold the hill.
4. When this battle had been fought, he set out for the winter camp.
5. He is afraid to do this.
6. He wished them to go home (360, c).
7. When he goes[1] to Gaul he will wage war upon all who refuse to give him hostages.
8. He wishes to place the winter camp in this region, but fears that there is no suitable place.

[1] Future Perfect.

praeda, praedae	centuriō, -ōnis	impetus, -us
alius, -a, -ud	cīvitās, -ātis	
certus, -a, -um	facultās, -ātis	aciēs, aciēī
	fīnis, fīnis	diēs, diēī
facilis, facile	opus, operis	rēs, rēī

quod

ab-sum, ab-esse, ā-fuī.
possum, posse, potuī.

existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.

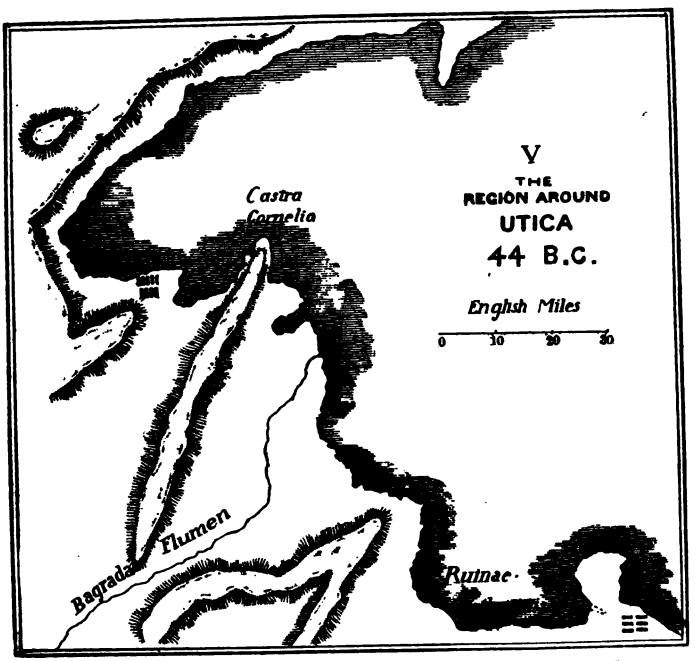
persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsus.
sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentus.
timeō, timēre, timuī, ——.

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, cōāctus.
cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus.
īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus.
ponō, ponere, posuī, positus.
relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus.
faciō, facere, fēcī, factus.
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitus.
interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus.
recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus.

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus.
eō, īre, īvī (iī), (itūrus).

cōnōr, cōnārī, cōnātus.
loquōr, loquī, locūtus.
proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus.
sequor, sequī, secūtus.
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus.
volō, velle, voluī.
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.

Lilybaeum
Sicilia
Selinus
Agrigentum
Apollinis Pr
Utica
Hippo Regius
Clupea
Bagradas
Zama Regia
Adrumetum
Thapsus
REGNUM LIBYAE MASSYLORUM
AFRICA
IV
AFRICA
SYRTIS MINOR
0 25 50 75
English Miles


V
THE
REGION AROUND
UTICA
44 B.C.
English Miles
0 10 20 30
Castra Cornelia
Bagrada Flumen
Ruinae

LESSON LXXIV.

READING LESSONS.

435. CURTIUS IN AFRICĀ.—V.

His rēbus cōnstitūtis ex quibusdam quī ex oppidō fūgerant audit Iubam rēgem rūrsus ad ēius terram bellō contendere coāctum esse, atque Saburram, ēius ducem, cum parvīs cōpiīs missum prope Uticam esse. Itaque rem proeliō committere cōnstituit.

Equitātum omnem primā nocte ad castra hostium mittere cōnstituit, ad flūmen Bagradam, quibus castrīs prae-erat Suburra, dē quō ante erat audītum, sed rēx Iuba omnibus cōpiīs sequēbātur et sex mīlibus passuum ab-erat. Equitēs missī nocte ad hostēs nihil timentēs impetum faciunt, multōs interficiunt; complūrēs perterritī fugiunt. Quō factō ad Curiōnem equitēs rūrsus veniunt captīvōsque ad eum re-dūcunt.

Curiō cum omnibus cōpiīs ex-ierat, cohortibus quīnque castrīs praesidiō relictīs. Profectus mīlia passuum sex ad equitēs vēnit, et rem gestam cōgnōvit. Captīvōs vīdit, et ex iīs quaesīvit, "Quis castrīs ad Bagradam flūmen praeest?" respondērunt, "Saburra." Reliqua studiō itineris cōn-ficiendī ex captīvīs quaerere praeter-mīsit, sed, mīlitibus quī proxima sīgna sequēbantur loquēns, "Vidētisne," dīxit, "captīvōrum ōrātiōnem convenīre cum ōrātiōne eōrum quī ex hoste ad nōs fūgērunt? ab-esse rēgem, parvās esse cōpiās missās, paucīs equitibus parēs esse nōn potuērunt. Ad praedam, ad glōriam properāte!"

Equitēs praetereā captōs hominēs equōsque prodūcēbant; itaque Curiōnis mīlitibus studia nōn dē-erant. Equitātuī ut sēsē sequerētur imperāvit ipseque multum properāvit, ut ad hostēs ex fugā perterritōs venīre posset. Sed equitēs, itinere tōtius noctis cōn-fectī, sequī nōn poterant, atque aliī aliō locō stabant. Iuba rex, certior factus ā Saburrā dē superiōre proe-

liō duo mīlia eōrum equitum quōs praesidiō circum sē habēbat et partem peditum ad Saburram mīsit; ipse cum reliquīs cōpiīs elephantīsque sexāgintā secūtus est. Exīstimāns praemissīs equitibus ipsum ventūrum esse Curiōnem, Saburra cōpiās equitum peditumque īnstrūxit, cōpiīs suīs imperāvit ut adventū Curiōnis vīsō paulātim sē reciperent; sēsē dīxit cum opus esset signum proelī datūrum esse. Curiō, cum hostēs quod ā Saburrā imperātum erat id facere atque sē recipere vidit, exīstimāns eōs quī superiōre nocte equitibus perterritī fūgissent rūrsus fugere, ut sequerētur cōpiās ex locīs superiōribus in campum dūxit. Quibus ex locīs cum longius esset profectus, dedit suīs signum Saburra et circum-iēns aciem imperāvit ut equitēs in aciem Curiōnis mitterentur.

Cum equitēs Saburrae in aciem Curiōnis impetum ita fēcērunt Curiō nōn dē-erat virtūte, neque dēfessīs mīlitibus neque equitibus, paucīs et labōre cōn-fectīs, studium ad pūgnandum virtūsque dē-erat. Equitēs erant numerō ducentī; reliquī in itinere steterant. Hī quamcumque in partem impetum faciēbant, hostēs ex eō locō fugere cōgēbant, sed equīs dēfessīs nōn longius fugientēs sequī poterant. Equitātus hostium ab utrōque cornū aciem nostram circum-ībant. Cum nostræ cohortēs ex aciē prō-cucurissent, hostēs celeriter impetum nostrōrum ex-fugiēbant, rūrsusque ad aciem redīre cōnātōs novō impetū circum-ībant, ut māgnā cum difficultāte ad suam aciem rūrsus venire nostrī possent. Novae cōpiae missīs ā rēge auxiliīs perveniēbant. Nostrī dēfessī erant et vulnerātīs nūllus tūtus locus erat, quod tōta aciēs equitātū hostium tenēbātur.

Curiō perterritīs omnibus ūnam rem reliquam esse exīstimāns, suīs mīlitibus imperāvit ut proximōs collīs caperent. Sed hōs quoque prae-occupāverat missus ā Saburrā equitātus. Tum vērō, nūllā spē salūtis relictā, ad summam dēsperātiōnem nostrī pervēnērunt. Complūrēs, fugientēs, ab equitātū interfectī sunt; alii salūtem fugā nōn petēbant sed in ipsō locō ubi stābant dēfessī atque sine spē prōcumbēbant.

Ad Curiōnem Domitius, dux equitum, cum paucīs equitibus veniēns, eum salūtem fugā petere et ad castra contendere voluit; hanc ūnam spem eī relinquī atque sē ab eō nōn exitūrum dixit. Sed Curiō numquam sē, ā-missō exercitū quem ā Caesare sibi com-missum accēpisset, in ēius cōnspectum rursus venīre dixit, atque ita pūgnāns interfectus est.

Equitēs ex proeliō paucī sē recēpērunt; sed iī quī ad novissimum agmen equōrum re-ficiendōrum causā steterant, fugā tōtius exercitūs vīsā, salūtem fugā petīvērunt atque sēsē celeriter in castra recēpērunt. Militēs ad ūnum omnēs interfectī sunt.

Quī in castrīs praesidiō ā Curiōne relictī erant, hōrum paucī nāvibus in Siciliam fugere potuērunt; reliquī Vārō, quī ad Uticam erat, sē in deditiōnem dedērunt. Quōrum complūrēs Iuba rēx Vārō nōlente interfēcit; paucōs captīvōs in terram suam mīsit.

FĪNIS.

436. (See that the sentences in your Latin translation of this exercise are as long as the English sentences, which follow the Latin idiom.)

The Romans set out with ten cohorts to march through (397, N. 1.) the forest to the winter camp. When they had gone a short distance [1] the Gallic cavalry began [2] to harass the rear rank. While the rear line of march was being thus harassed by the Gallic horsemen, the rest of the Gauls suddenly attacked the three foremost cohorts from two directions, in order that they might throw them into great confusion (greatly disturb them). The foremost soldiers, (though) in confusion, none the less [3] did not flee, but, hastily following the legate with the cohort which was in the rear rank of the three, they seized the nearest hill very quickly. When the line of battle had been

[1] spatium. [2] coepērunt. [3] tamen.

formed in this place they defended themselves with great bravery for a long time, supposing that the other seven cohorts would come to give them help.

But the other legate, who was over these cohorts, being informed by a few soldiers who had fled at the first attack that the greater part of the soldiers of the first three cohorts had been killed, and that the rest were following in flight,[1] fearing lest his own soldiers would be disturbed, commanded (419, 1) them to withdraw to a suitable place, where,[2] during the rest of the day, he was (engaged in) fortifying [3] a camp.

Meantime [4] the soldiers of the three cohorts, lacking everything of use for fortifying a camp, since their baggage had been captured at the first attack, wearied by the previous march, and so [5] few in number that no chance was given of sending fresh soldiers to stand [6] in the line in the place of those who were wounded or killed, were compelled to defend themselves with their swords and shields.[7] When at length [8] (only) a small part of the day was left the centurions, since many soldiers were wounded or dead, (and) the rest were terrified, supposing that the remaining cohorts were hard pressed by the Gauls and for this reason were unable to send help, fearing also [9] lest they all be killed during the night, persuaded the legate to ask for the chief of the Gauls and confer with (talk with) him as to [10] surrender.[11]

When opportunity was given in this way, the three cohorts, when the legate and six centurions had been given as hostages, surrendered to the Gauls.

[1] **fuga.** [2] **ubi.** [3] **mūniō, mūnīre.** [4] **interim.** [5] **tam.** [6] **stō, stāre.** [7] **scūtum.** [8] **tandem.** [9] **quoque.** [10] **dē.** [11] **dēditiō.**

LESSON LXXV.

437. EXAMPLES.

DIRECT QUESTIONS.	INDIRECT QUESTIONS.
Ubi est?	**Cōgnōscam ubi sit,**
Where is he?	*I will find out where he is.*
Ubi erās?	**Quaerit ubi sīs,**
Where were you?	*He asks where you were.*
	Quaesīvit ubi essēs,
	He asked where you were. — Indirect Questions.
Ubi vēnistis?	**Scit ubi vēneritis,**
Where did you go?	*He knows where you went.*
	Scīvit ubi vēnissētis,
	He knew where you went.

a. Compare these two sets of sentences, and determine from them what constitutes an **indirect question** in **Latin.**

b. Is it the same as an indirect question in English grammar?

c. Notice that indirect questions follow verbs denoting mental action, but that they do **not** follow the rule for indirect statements (413).

d. Notice that they conform to the rule for sequence of tenses (411).

438. RULE.—An **indirect question** takes the **subjunctive.**

439. EXAMPLE.

Quam plurima oppida cēpit, *He took as many towns as possible.* — Quam with Superlative.

This sentence illustrates a use of **quam** with the superlative.

440.

1. Ab hīs quaesīvit quae cīvitātēs in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent.

2. Equitibus imperat ut quam māximum frūmentum agrīs hostium ex-portent.

3. Dumnorix apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat.

4. Ēius reī quae esset causa ex ipsīs quaesīvit.

5. Quam plūrimās cīvitātēs occupāre volēbat.

6. Caesar quam māximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit. Quam māximum potest mīlitum numerum cogit.

7. Con-vocātō conciliō et ad id concilium ad-hibitīs centuriōnibus Caesar ex iīs quaesīvit cūr quaererent aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur: quid timērent? cūr sēsē dē-esse virtūte exīstimārent?

8. Ariovistus ā Caesare quaerit quid sibi velit; cūr in suās possessiōnēs veniat.

9. Ad Ariovistum lēgātōs Caesar mīsit; quōs cum in suīs castrīs Ariovistus vīdisset, con-clāmāvit quid ad sē venīrent. Sed cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit.

10. Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus nōn pūgnāret, dīxērunt eās mulierēs quae nūntiārent utrum proelium ex ūsū esset nec-ne, ita dīcere, nōn Germānōs superātūrōs esse sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

11. Cum ille homō quis sit mihi nūntiāre nōlit, eī nōn permittam ut in domum eat.

441.

1. We asked what you wanted.

2. He takes as much grain as possible.

3. He asked whether the soldiers wished to fight.

4. They ask who the most powerful man in this state may be.

5. He is informed that they are collecting as many soldiers as possible.

6. When Ariovistus saw the envoys of Caesar, he asked why they had come to his camp.

7. He hurried into Italy by the longest marches possible.

8. He orders (419, 1) his soldiers to carry away as many arms as possible from the camps of the enemy.

9. When this help had been given by the cavalry, the enemy were so pressed by our soldiers that some of them retreated, and some surrendered (126).

10. He says that they will come.

LESSON LXXVI.

442. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

Conditional sentences contain two clauses: a **condition** (introduced by **sī**, *if*, or one of its compounds) and a **conclusion.**

443. There are **three classes** of conditional sentences:

I. **Nothing Implied.**

Sī vēnit, vīdērunt, *If he came, they saw him.*

Sī veniet, vidēbunt, *If he comes, they will see him.*

Sī id fēcerit, laetus erō, *If he does* (*shall have done*) *this, I will be glad.*

a. There is nothing in the first two sentences by which one can infer whether the person spoken of came or not.

b. This class makes use of the **indicative** in both clauses.

c. Why is the Latin **future perfect** more exact than the English future in the last sentence?

RULE.—**Simple conditional sentences** take the **indicative** in both condition and conclusion.

II. **Less Vivid Future.**

This represents the act as scarcely probable.

Si veniat, laetus sim, *If he should come, I would be glad.*

a. Notice that the **present subjunctive** is used in both clauses.

b. Notice the tenses "**should**" and "**would**", used in English in this form of conditional sentence.

RULE.—**Less vivid future conditions** take the **present subjunctive** in both condition and conclusion.

III. **Contrary Implied.**

In this class one is able to infer whether the condition has been fulfilled.

. For example, we say in English:

If he had come to town, I would have seen him.

Has he or has he not come to town?

If he were in the building, I would know it.

Is he in the building?

Sī impetum faceret, hostis nōs nōn premeret, *If he were making an attack, the enemy would not be harassing us.*

Sī impetum fēcisset, hostis nōs nōn pressisset, *If he had made an attack, the enemy would not have harassed us.*

a. Notice that the **subjunctive imperfect** is used in both clauses to denote **present time,** and the **subjunctive pluperfect** in both clauses to denote **past time.**

RULE.—**Conditions contrary to fact** take the **imperfect subjunctive** when referring to **present time,** and the **pluperfect subjunctive** when referring to **past time.**

444.

1. Sī obsidēs dedissent, bellum iīs nōn in-tulisset.

2. Sī quidquam Rōmānīs accidat, summam in spem imperi obtinendi Dumnorix veniat.

3. Nisi quodquam in Caesare sit auxilium, omnēs Gallī domō ex-eant.

4. Sī quidquam voluissent, vēnissent.

5. Id si fiat, māgnō cum periculō eī sit.

6. Militibus perterritīs Caesar dixit: "Sī Ariovistus bellum intulerit, quid timeātis? proximā nocte ad hostem pro-

ficiscar. Sī nēmō praetereā sequātur, tamen ego cum sōlā decimā legiōne ibō, dē quā nōn dubitō."

7. Lēgātīs quī ā Caesare missī quaerēbant ut locum conloquiō diceret Ariovistus dīxit; "Sī quid mihi ā Caesare operis esset, ego ad eum venīrem; si quid ille vult, cūr ille ad mē nōn venit?" Caesar respondit; "Sī ea quae postulō fēceris, amīcus tibi erō; sī nōn faciēs, ego auxilium Haeduīs contrā tē dabō."

Ariovistus respondit; "Sī ipse populō Rōmānō imperārem quās rēs gerant, tum vērō bonā causā ita mihi imperārēs. Sī Haeduī ea quae postulō facient, bellum nōn in-feram; sed sī id nōn fēcerint, bellum ācriter in-feram. Sī auxilium Caesar iīs det contrā Germānōs, quibuscum nēmō sine māgnō periculō contendit, quid possit?"

8. Cum ea ita sint, tamen vōbiscum bellum inferam.

9. Cum māgnā virtūte hīc mīles sīgnum in hostēs in-tulerit, fīet centuriō.

10. Cum hunc rēgem nōn tuleris, illum ferte.

445.

1. If I should ask you for anything, you would give it to me.

2. If he were in the city, I would be there too (436, N. 9).

3. If he had a sword, he would not be able to wound anyone with it.

4. If Ariovistus had not conquered the Haedui, he would not have been attacked by Caesar. If Caesar had not waged war upon him, many more Germans would have crossed the river Rhine.

5. If you wish to speak with me, come to my house.

6. If you had wished to see me, you would have come to me.

7. If you should do this, I would be compelled to be your enemy.

8. If I were your enemy, I would not be giving you aid.

9. If the hostages had been given, there would have been no war.

10. Would we be afraid of them, if they were very brave men ?

LESSON LXXVII.

446. EXAMPLES.

POSITIVE.		NEGATIVE.	
Mittam,	*let me send.*	**Nē mittam,**	*let me not send.*
Mittās,	*send.*	**Nē mittās,**	*do not send.*
Mīseris,		**Nē mīseris,**	
Mitte,		**Nōlī mittere,**	
Mittat,	*let him send.*	**Nē mittat,**	*let him not send.*
Mīserit,		**Nē mīserit,**	

a. Diagram the usage in the plural in the same way. **Commands and Appeals.**

b. Observe that both **imperative** and **subjunctive** forms are used.

c. Observe that the **negative** is **nē**.

d. The **imperative** of **nōlō** (**nōlī**, **nōlīte**) with the **infinitive** is frequently used.

447. RULE.—**Commands** are put in the **imperative** or **subjunctive**; **appeals** in the **subjunctive**. The negative is **nē**.

448. EXAMPLES.

Cum vīs, venī, *When you wish, come.*

Dīcit cum velīs veniās, *He says that you may come when you wish.*

Dīxit cum vellēs venīrēs, *He said that you could come when you wished.*

Indirect Discourse: Commands and Appeals.

Nē moneat, *Let him not advise.*

Dīcit nē moneat, *He says that he may not advise.*

Dixit nē monēret, *He said that he should not advise.*

a. Notice that after a verb denoting mental action the **imperative venī** in the first sentence is changed to the **subjunctive,** and the **subjunctive moneat** in the fourth remains a **subjunctive.**

b. Observe that the rule for Sequence of Tenses (411) is followed.

449. RULE.—**In Indirect Discourse** the subjunctive of **Appeals** and **Commands remains** a **Subjunctive.**

The **Imperative** is in Indirect Discourse **changed** to the **Subjunctive.**

450. The **three** forms of **Indirect Discourse** have now all been studied:

Indirect Statements (413) take the **Infinitive** with **Subject Accusative** and the **Subjunctive** in **Subordinate Clauses.**

Indirect Questions (438) take the **Subjunctive.**

Indirect Commands (449) take the **Subjunctive.**

The Three Forms of Indirect Discourse.

The **Subjunctives** throughout **conform** to the **rule for the Sequence of Tenses** (411).

451. I.

Ariovistō Caesar nūntium misit: "Haec sunt, quae ā tē postulō: prīmum, nē hominum multitūdinem trāns Rhēnum flūmen trādūcās, deinde, obsidēs red-īre per-mittās, atque nē Haeduīs bellum īnferās."

Ariovistus respondit; "Cum Haeduī superātī sint, obsidēs red-īre nōn per-mittam. Cum vīs, venī; cōgnōscēs quid Germānī virtūte possint."

Caesar cum exercitū vēnit et in conloquiō Ariovistō dīxit; "Nē Haeduīs bellum in-fertō; obsidēs red-īre per-mittitō; plūrēs Germānōs trāns Rhēnum nē trā-dūcitō." Ariovistus respondit; "Quid mihi vīs? cūr in meās possessiōnēs vēnisti? Sī tē interfēcerō, multīs prīncipibus populī Rōmānī grātum erit."

Hōc conloquiō habitō Ariovistus per lēgātōs dixit; "Conloquendī fīnem nē fēceris, sed aut aliquem conloquiō diem cōnstitueris aut ex tuīs aliquem ad mē mīseris."

Duōs lēgātōs Caesar mīsit, quōs cum Ariovistus vīdisset, conclāmāvit, "Cūr ad mē veniunt?" atque eōs hostium in numerō habuit.

II.

Caesar nūntiāvit haec esse quae postulāret; nē multitūdinem in Galliam Ariovistus trādūceret, obsidēs red-īre permitteret, nē Haeduīs bellum in-ferret.

Ariovistus respondit sē obsidēs nōn red-īre permittūrum esse; cum Caesar vellet, venīret.

Caesar in conloquiō postulāvit nē bellum Haeduīs Ariovistus in-ferret; obsidēs red-īre per-mitteret, plūrēs Germānōs trāns Rhēnum nē trādūceret.

Ariovistus quaesīvit quid Caesar vellet, et dīxit sī eum interfēcisset id multīs Rōmānīs grātum futūrum esse.

452.

1. The Germans ask why the Romans are demanding that they shall not take hostages from those states of Gaul which they have conquered. They ask why the Romans have come into that part of Gaul which they, and not the former, have conquered. Do the Romans wish to wage war with them? (they ask). If they do, they say, let them come: war is always[1] pleasing to the Germans.

2. They wish me to ask you what you want.

3. You may come if you wish, but do not talk with me.

4. Come to me some other day, since I am unable to give you anything to-day[2] (427).

5. I demand that you do not come to the camp if the legate be unwilling.

[1] semper. [2] hodiē.

LESSON LXXVIII.

453. The First (or Active) Periphrastic [1] Conjugation is formed by combining the **future active participle** with the tenses of the verb **sum**. First Periphrastic Conjugation.

Tē monitūrus erat, *He was about to* (*going to, intending to*) *advise you.*

Tē missūrus erit, *He will be about to send you.*

a. What form of this conjugation has already been used freely?

454. The Second (or Passive) Periphrastic [1] Conjugation is of frequent occurrence. It is somewhat puzzling, because it scarcely admits of a literal translation into English. It is used frequently by Caesar and other Latin writers. Second Periphrastic Conjugation.

It is formed by combining the **Gerundive** with the tenses of the verb **sum**.

The **Second** Periphrastic Conjugation is **Passive** and denotes a **necessity** or **duty**.

Mittendus sum, *I am to be* (*must be, ought to be, deserve to be*) *sent.*

Mittendus eram, *I was to be* (*should have been, ought to have been, deserve to have been*) *sent.*

Mittendus erō, *I shall have to be sent.*

455. Rule.—The **gerundive** with the verb **sum** is used to form the **passive** (or **second**) **periphrastic conjugation**, denoting **obligation** or **duty**.

456. Another peculiarity of this Conjugation is that it uses a **dative** to denote the **doer** or agent, where the ordinary conjugations use the ablative of **agent**. Dative of Agent.

[1] The adjective "periphrastic" and noun "periphrasis" are derived from the Greek. The corresponding Latin derivative is "circumlocution (**circum, loquor**). "Periphrasis" means "a roundabout method of expression."

Tibi mittendus sum, *I must be sent by you.*

Caesarī omnia agenda sunt, *Everything has to be done by Caesar.*

RULE.—The **agent** with the **gerundive** is expressed by the **dative.**

457. The **Impersonal** construction is frequent with this conjugation.

Impersonal means having **no personal** subject. The **clause** is sometimes considered the **subject.**

Ad urbem exercitui veniendum est, *The army must come to the city (the necessity of coming to the city is to the army).*

Mihi pūgnandum est, *I must fight (the necessity of fighting is to me).*

458.

1. Tibi exercitus dūcendus est.
2. Ad montem proximum legiōnibus veniendum est.
3. Hīs cōgnitīs Labiēnus exīstimāvit sibi contendendum esse.
4. Ācriter Gallī pūgnāvērunt.
5. Ācriter ā Gallīs pūgnātum est.
6. Ācriter Gallīs pūgnandum est.
7. Cum ā hostibus premērēmur, tamen nōbīs castra ponenda erant.
8. Galbae cum reliquīs cōpiīs proficīscendum est.
9. Duābus legiōnibus atque impedīmentīs tōtīus exercitūs relictīs ad Bōiōs veniendum est.
10. Galba cum peditibus ad castra mittendus fuit.
11. Frūmentī inopiā oppidum in deditiōnem Caesarī dandum est.
12. Illud mihi nōn dīcendum est.
13. In idōneō locō lēgātō castra ponenda sunt.
14. Eī illīus gladius capiendus erat.
15. In Gallōs Rōmānis impetus faciendus est.

16. Caesar existimāvit hostium castra sibi oppūgnanda esse.

17. Praesidiō in castrīs relictō omnēs cōpiae ad aquam dūcendae fuērunt.

18. Omnia bene mihi gerenda sunt.

19. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant facienda; ab opere re-vocandi mīlitēs, aciēs instruenda, signum tubā dandum.

20. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar exīstimāvit cōnsilium sibi capiendum esse ex locī natūrā. Erant circum castra Pompēī per-multī collēs. Hōs prīmum praesidiīs tenendōs esse cōnstituit. Pompēius quoque cōnstituit sibi quam plūrimōs collīs quam māximō circuitū occupandōs esse, ut multa eā causā proelia fierent.

21. Cum complūrēs barbarī populō Rōmānō bellum īnferant, tamen superābuntur.

22. Labiēnus, cum hunc locum occupāvisset, māgnum hostibus terrōrem in-tulit.

459.

1. You must hurry.

2. The Germans must be kept out of Gaul by the Romans.

3. He said that the river had to be crossed.[1]

4. He asked what you were going to do.

5. We must go to the city. He asks why[2] we must go.

6. The legate thought that he ought to send a legion to hold the mountain, since the Gauls were about to attack with large forces.

7. The town must be defended by the soldiers, although one of the two legates is wounded.

8. The signal of battle must be given.

9. If you must make the attack, fight very bravely.

10. He says that we must attack all of the winter camps of the Romans upon the same day.

[1] trāns-eō. [2] cūr.

READING LESSONS.

460. The Dying Standard Bearer.

In proeliō cum graviter aquilifer vulnerātus esset, vidēns equitēs nostrōs "Hanc aquilam ego" dixit, "et vivus multōs per annōs māgnā dīligentiā dēfendī et nunc moriēns eādem fidē ad Caesarem mittō. Nōlīte committere quod ante in exercitū Caesaris nōn accidit incolumemque ad eum dēferte."

Ita aquila servātur, omnibus primae cohortis centuriōnibus interfectīs praeter principem priōrem.

461. Dying for his Men.

Mārcus Petrōnius octāvae legiōnis centuriō, cum portās oppidī Gallōrum excidere cōnātus esset, ā multitūdine Gallōrum superātus ac iam vulnerātus mīlitibus suīs quī eum secūtī erant "Quoniam" dixit "mē vōbīscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae certē vītae providēbō, quōs spē glōriae adductus in perīculum dūxī. Vōs datā facultāte vōbīs providēte."

Haec locūtus in hostēs contendit duōbusque interfectīs reliquōs ā portā paulim summōvit. Cōnantibus auxilium dare suīs "Frūstrā" dixit "meae vītae subvenīre cōnāminī, quī iam gravius vulnerātus sum. Ab-īte dum est facultās, vōsque ad legiōnem recipite." Ita pūgnāns suīs salūtī fuit et brevī tempore interfectus est.

462. The three selections which follow relate incidents which occurred during Caesar's campaign in Africa. The partisans of the Senate collected in this province after the battle of Pharsalia (245), where Varus and king Juba, who had defeated Curio (361), were still unsubdued. Since Pompey was dead (255) Scipio was declared by them to be the only real "imperator", or general-in-chief of the Roman government.

463. IS CAESAR AN IMPERATOR?

Plancus Caesaris lēgātus petīvit ab eō ut sibi darētur facultās cum Cōnsidiō agendī, sī posset perdūcī ad sānitātem. Itaque, datā facultāte, litterās captīvō dat perferendās in oppidum ad Cōnsidium. Ad quem cum captīvus pervēnisset, litterāsque Cōnsidiō dabat; prius quam acciperet ille "Ā quō", dīxit, "illās?" Tum captīvus, "Ab imperātōre Caesare" Tum Cōnsidius, "Ūnus est", dīxit, "Scīpiō imperātor hōc tempore populī Rōmānī." Deinde in cōnspectū suō imperāvit ut captīvus statim interficerētur, litterāsque dedit hominī certō quī eās ad Scīpiōnem perferret.

464. LABIENUS MEETS HIS MATCH.

Labienus, during Caesar's wars in Gaul, had been long commander of Caesar's most trusted legion, the tenth. He here appears fighting against his former soldiers (cp. 185).

Labiēnus in equō capite nūdō in primā aciē pūgnābat, et nōnnumquam legiōnāriōs Caesaris appellābat: "Quid tū", dixit, "mīles tirō, tam ferōculus es?" Tum mīles, "Nōn sum", dīxit, "tirō, Labiēne, sed dē legiōne decimā veterānus." Tum Labiēnus, "Nōn āgnōscō", dīxit, "sīgna decumānōrum." Tum mīles, "Iam mē, quis sim, cōgnōscās", et statim cassidem dē capite dē-iēcit, ut cōgnōscī ab eō posset, atque statim tēlum in Labiēnum mittere contendit. Equō vulnerātō, dīxit, "Labiēne, decumānum mīlitem, quī tē petit, cōgnōsce esse."

465. FAITHFUL UNTIL DEATH.

Ex classe quam ā Siciliā ad Caesarem mīserat Alliēnus, nāvis ūna, in quā fuerat Cominius et Ticida, eques Rōmānus, tempestāte Thapsum dēlāta, excepta est et ad Scīpiōnem dēdūcta. Item altera nāvis ex eādem classe tempestāte ad Aeginūrum dēlāta ā classe Vārī et Octāvī est capta, in quā mīlitēs veterānī cum ūnō centuriōne et nōn-nūllī tīrōnēs fuē-

runt; quōs Vārus, servātōs, mīsit ad Scīpiōnem. Quī postquam ad eum pervēnērunt, "Nōn vestrā", dīxit, "sponte vōs, sciō, sed illīus vestrī imperātōris imperiō coāctōs esse cum nōbīs optimīs pūgnāre. Quōs quoniam fortūna in nostram dētulit potestātem, sī rem publicam cum optimō quoque dēfendētis, vōbīs vītam et praemia dabimus."

Postquam ita dīxerat Scīpiō, cum exīstimāvisset prō suō beneficiō ab iīs grātiās sibi āctum īrī, potestātem iīs dīcendī fēcit. Ex eīs centuriō legiōnis quartae decimae "Prō tuō", dīxit, "summō beneficiō, Scīpiō, tibi grātiās agō (nōn nam imperātōrem tē appellō) quod mihi vītam captīvō polliceris; et forsitan istō ūterer beneficiō, sī nōn eī summum scelus adiungerētur. Egone contrā Caesarem, imperātōrem meum, ēiusque exercitum, prō cūius victōriā amplius sex et trīgintā annīs pūgnāvī, armātus[1] cōnsistam? Nōn ego istud factūrus sum. Contrā cūius cōpiās contendis, nunc cōgnōsce. Cohortem ūnam, quae est tuārum firmissima, cōnstitue contrā mē; ego autem[2] ex hīs mīlitibus quōs nunc in tuā tenēs potestāte, nōn amplius decem summam; tum ex virtūte nostrā cognōscēs quid ā tuīs cōpiīs contrā illum agī possit."

Postquam haec centuriō est locūtus, Scīpiō, incēnsus, annuit centuriōnibus quid fierī vellet, atque ante pedēs centuriōnem interfēcit. Ut veterānī ā tīrōnibus secernerentur imperāvit. "Abdūcite", dīxit, "istōs scelere affectōs!" Ita extrā vallum dēductī sunt et interfectī.

466. An Incident at the Battle of Pharsalia.

Erat Crastīnus in exercitū Caesaris, quī superiōre annō apud eum prīmum pīlum in legiōne decimā dūxerat, vir māgnā virtūte. Hīc, sīgnō datō, "Sequiminī me", dīxit, "manipulārēs meī quī fuistis, et vestrō imperātōrī, quam cōnstituistis, operam date. Ūnum hōc proelium super-est, quō cōnfectō et ille suam dignitātem et nōs lībertātem recuperābimus." Simul[3] vidēns Caesarem, "Faciam", dīxit, "hodiē, imperātōr, ut aut vīvō aut mortuō grātiās agās." . . .

[1] *armed.* [2] *on the other hand.* [3] *at the same time.*

In eō proeliō interfectus est etiam fortissimē pūgnāns Crastīnus, cūius mentiōnem suprā fēcimus. Neque id fuit falsum, quod ille in pūgnam proficiscēns dīxerat. Ita Caesar existimābat, eō proeliō excellentissimam virtūtem Crastīnī fuisse.

467. PŪGNA PHARSALICA.

The battle of Pharsalia has already been briefly described (245). After Caesar had succeeded in bringing his whole army over from Italy as already described (170) he attempted to shut Pompey in at Dyrrhachium by surrounding his army with entrenchments. In this attempt he was disastrously defeated by Pompey.[1] He retreated rapidly into Thessaly, pursued by Pompey, who was joined by Scipio with reinforcements. It seemed to followers of the latter that success was now certain, and they could not understand why he was reluctant to risk another battle with Caesar's veterans.

Pompēius paucīs post diēbus in Thessaliam pervēnit, atque apud tōtum exercitum suīs agit grātiās, receptīsque omnibus Scipiōnis legiōnibus spēs victōriā augētur. Inter sē dē praemiīs prīncipēs ēius exercitūs contendēbant; aliī domōs bonaque eōrum quī in castrīs erant Caesaris petēbant.

Rē frūmentāriā parātā cōnfirmātīsque mīlitibus et satis longē spatiō temporis ā superiōribus proeliīs intermissō temptandum esse Caesar existimāvit quid Pompēius studī pūgnandī habēret. Itaque ex castrīs exercitum ēdūxit aciemque īnstrūxit, sed prīmō suīs locīs paulōque ā castrīs Pompēī longius.

Pompēius, quī castra in colle habēbat, ad īnfimās partēs montis aciem īnstruēbat, semper exspectāns sī inīquīs locīs Caesar sē subiceret. Caesar nūllā ratiōne ad pūgnam ēlicī posse Pompēium exīstimāns hanc sibi commodissimam bellī ratiōnem iūdicāvit, ut castra ex eō locō movēret semperque esset in itineribus, haec exspectāns, ut movendīs castrīs plūribusque adeundīs locīs commodiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur et

[1] An incident of this battle is related in 460.

in itinere ut aliquam occāsiōnem pūgnandī reperīret. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus sīgnō iam datō vīsum est paulō longius ā vallō aciem Pompēī iisse, ut nōn inīquō locō posse pūgnārī vidērētur. Tum Caesar apud suōs, cum iam esset agmen in portīs, "Differendum est," dīxit, "iter nōbīs, et dē proeliō cōgitandum est, quod semper voluimus. Sīmus ad pūgnandum parātī; nōn facile occāsiōnem posteā reperiēmus."

Pompēius quoque cōnstituerat pūgnāre. Etiam in conciliō superiōribus diēbus dīxerat, "Sciō mē paene incrēdibilem rem pollicērī, sed ratiōnem cōnsilī meī accipite. Persuāsī equitibus nostrīs, idque mihi factūrōs esse cōnfirmāvērunt, ut, cum propius agmina īssent dextrum Caesaris cornū ā parte apertā oppūgnārent et aciē circumventā prius perturbātum ēius exercitum pellerent quam ā nōbīs tēlum in hostem iacerētur." Labiēnus quoque, "Nōlī," dīxit, "exīstimāre, hunc esse exercitum quī Galliam Germāniamque superāvit. Omnibus interfuī proeliīs. Perexigua pars illīus exercitūs superest; māgna pars interiit." Haec cum dixisset iūrāvit sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn rūrsus itūrum esse. Pompēius idem iūrāvit, nec vērō ex reliquīs fuit quisquam quī iūrāre dubitāvit. Haec cum facta sunt in conciliō māgna spēs iīs fuit, quod Pompēiō imperātōre nihil frūstrā cōnfirmārī vidēbātur.

Caesar, cum ad Pompēī castra prope vēnisset, aciem ēius instructam ita vīdit. Erant in sinistrō cornū legiōnēs duae quārum ūna prima, altera tertia, appellābātur. In eō locō ipse erat Pompēius. Mediam aciem Scīpiō cum legiōnibus Syriacīs tenēbat. Cilicēnsis legiō cum cohortibus Hispānīs in dextrō cornū erant conlocātae. Hās firmissimās sē habēre Pompēius exīstimābat. Reliquae inter aciem mediam cornuaque erant conlocātae. Numerō cohortēs erant centum et decem. Haec erant mīlia quadrāgintā quīnque. Reliquās cohortēs septem in castrīs castellīsque praesidiō posuerat. In dextrō cornū ēius erat rīvus quīdam, quā causā omnem equitātum cum sagittāriīs funditōribusque sinistrō cornū posuerat.

Caesar decimam legiōnem in dextrō cornū, nōnam in sinistrō, conlocāverat, et huic sīc adiungit octāvam ut paene ūnam

ex duābus efficeret, atque imperāvit ut altera alterī praesidiō esset. Cohortēs in aciē octāgintā cōnstitūtās habēbat, quae summa erat milium duo et vīginti. Cohortēs duās castrīs praesidiō reliquerat. Sinistrō cornū Antōnium, dextrō Sullam, mediae aciēī Domitium praefēcit. Ipse contrā Pompēium cōnstitit. Aciē Pompēī vīsā, timēns nē ā multitūdine equitum dextrum cornū circumvenīrētur, celeriter ex cohortibus tertiae aciēī quartam fēcit equitātuīque opposuit[1] et quid fieri vellet nūntiāvit monuitque ēius diēī victōriam in eārum cohortium virtūte cōnstāre. Tertiae aciēī tōtīque exercitui imperāvit nē concurreret nisi ipse imperāret; sē, cum id fieri vellet, signum datūrum esse.

His cōnstitūtīs signum dedit. Inter duās aciēs tantum erat relictum spati ut satis esset ad cursum utrīusque exercitūs. Sed Pompēius suīs praedixerat ut Caesaris impetum exciperent neve[2] sē locō movērent, ut duplicātō cursū Caesaris mīlitēs essent dēfessī. Sed nostrī mīlitēs datō signō cum prōcucurrissent atque vīdissent nōn concurrī ā mīlitibus Pompēī, ūsū perītī[3] suā sponte ad medium paene spatium cōnstitērunt, parvōque intermissō temporis spatiō rūrsus cucurrērunt[4] et statim tēla mīsērunt. Neque vērō mīlitēs Pompēī huic reī dēfuērunt. Et tēla missa excēpērunt et impetum legiōnum tulērunt et tēlīs missīs ad gladiōs rediērunt.

Eōdem tempore equitēs ab sinistrō Pompēī cornū prōcucurrērunt. Quōrum impetum noster equitātus nōn tulit, equitēsque Pompēī, hōc ācriōrēs, aciem nostram ā parte apertā circumībant. Quod cum Caesar cōgnōvisset quartae aciēī quam parāverat sex cohortium dedit signum. Illī celeriter prōcucurrērunt et in Pompēī equitēs tam ācriter impetum fēcērunt ut eōrum nēmō cōnstāret, atque nōn sōlum locō pellerentur sed fugā montēs altissimōs peterent. Quibus pulsīs omnēs sagittārii funditōrēsque sine praesidiō interfectī sunt. Eōdem impetū cohortēs sinistrum cornū pūgnantibus etiam tum in aciē Pompēī circumiērunt.

Eōdem tempore tertiae aciēī, quae sē ad id tempus locō tenuerat, Caesar imperāvit ut prōcurreret. Ita ex duābus

[1] *set against.* [2] *-ve, and.* [3] *skilled.* [4] *charged.*

partibus eōdem tempore aciēs Pompēī oppūgnābātur. Mīlitēs ēius eā causā impetum sustinēre nōn potuērunt, sed omnēs fūgērunt atque ad castra contendērunt.

Caesar, nūllum spatium perterritīs dandum esse existimāns, suīs mīlitibus imperāvit ut castra oppūgnārent. Castra ā cohortibus quae praesidiō erant relictae ācriter dēfendēbantur; multō etiam ācrius ā Thracibus barbarīsque auxiliīs. Neque vērō diūtius quī in vallō cōnstiterant multitūdinem tēlōrum sustinēre potuērunt, sed multīs vulnerātīs locum relīquērunt et omnēs ducibus ūsī centuriōnibus tribūnīsque mīlitum in altissimōs montēs quī ad castra pertinēbant fūgērunt. Proximā diē in dēditiōnem Caesarī sē dedērunt.

In hōc proeliō nōn amplius ducentōs mīlites, sed centuriōnēs circiter trīgintā, Caesar āmīsit. Ex Pompēī exercitū circiter mīlia quīndecim interfecta esse vidēbantur, sed in dēditiōnem vēnērunt mīlia vīgintī quattuor; multī praetereā fūgērunt; sīgnaque ex proeliō ad Caesarem sunt relāta centum et octōgintā et aquilae novem.

FĪNIS.

TABLES OF DECLENSION AND CONJUGATION.

NOUNS.

468. First Declension.—A Stems.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
	FEMININE.	
N.	silva	silvae
G.	silvae	silvārum
D.	silvae	silvīs
Ac.	silvam	silvās
Ab.	silvā	silvīs
V.	(silva)	(silvae)

469. Second Declension.—O Stems.

	SINGULAR.				
	M.	N.	M.	M.	N.
N.	mūrus	oppidum	vir	ager	cōnsilium
G.	mūrī	oppidī	virī	agrī	cōnsilī
D.	mūrō	oppidō	virō	agrō	cōnsiliō
Ac.	mūrum	oppidum	virum	agrum	cōnsilium
Ab.	mūrō	oppidō	virō	agrō	cōnsiliō
V.	(mūre)	(oppidum)	(vir)	(ager)	(cōnsilium)
	PLURAL.				
N.	mūrī	oppida	virī	agrī	cōnsilia
G.	mūrōrum	oppidōrum	virōrum	agrōrum	cōnsiliōrum
D.	mūrīs	oppidīs	virīs	agrīs	cōnsiliīs
Ac.	mūrōs	oppida	virōs	agrōs	cōnsilia
Ab.	mūrīs	oppidīs	virīs	agrīs	cōnsiliīs
V.	(mūrī)	(oppida)	(virī)	(agrī)	(cōnsilia)

470. Third Declension.

Mute Stems.

SINGULAR.

	M.	M.	N.
N.	princeps	rēx	caput
G.	principis	rēgis	capitis
D.	principī	rēgī	capitī
Ac.	principem	rēgem	caput
Ab.	principe	rēge	capite
V.	(princeps)	(rēx)	(caput)

PLURAL.

N.	principēs	rēgēs	capita
G.	principum	rēgum	capitum
D.	principibus	rēgibus	capitibus
Ac.	principēs	rēgēs	capita
Ab.	principibus	rēgibus	capitibus
V.	(principēs)	(rēgēs)	(capita)

Liquid Stems.

SINGULAR.

	M.	M. & F.	N.
N.	cōnsul	homō	lītus
G.	cōnsulis	hominis	lītoris
D.	cōnsulī	hominī	lītorī
Ac.	cōnsulem	hominem	lītus
Ab.	cōnsule	homine	lītore
V.	(cōnsul)	(homō)	(lītus)

PLURAL.

N.	cōnsulēs	hominēs	lītora
G.	cōnsulum	hominum	lītorum
D.	cōnsulibus	hominibus	lītoribus
Ac.	cōnsulēs	hominēs	lītora
Ab.	cōnsulibus	hominibus	lītoribus
V.	(cōnsulēs)	(hominēs)	(lītora)

STEMS IN i.

SINGULAR.

	M. & F.	F.	F.	N.
N.	host**is**	nūb**ēs**	urb**s**	animal
G.	host**is**	nūb**is**	urb**is**	animāl**is**
D.	host**ī**	nūb**ī**	urb**ī**	animāl**ī**
Ac.	host**em**	nūb**em**	urb**em**	animal
AB.	host**e**	nūb**e**	urb**e**	animāl**ī**
V.	(host**is**)	(nūb**ēs**)	(urb**s**)	(animal)

PLURAL.

N.	host**ēs**	nūb**ēs**	urb**ēs**	animāl**ia**
G.	host**ium**	nūb**ium**	urb**ium**	animāl**ium**
D.	host**ibus**	nūb**ibus**	urb**ibus**	animāl**ibus**
Ac.	host**īs, -ēs**	nūb**īs, -ēs**	urb**īs, -ēs**	animāl**ia**
AB.	host**ibus**	nūb**ibus**	urb**ibus**	animāl**ibus**
V.	(host**ēs**)	(nūb**ēs**)	(urb**ēs**)	(animāl**ia**)

471. FOURTH DECLENSION.—**U** STEMS.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M.	N.	M.	N.
N.	curs**us**	corn**ū**	curs**ūs**	corn**ua**
G.	curs**ūs**	corn**ūs**	curs**uum**	corn**uum**
D.	curs**uī, -ū**	corn**ū**	curs**ibus**	corn**ibus**
Ac.	curs**um**	corn**ū**	curs**ūs**	corn**ua**
AB.	curs**ū**	corn**ū**	curs**ibus**	corn**ibus**
V.	(curs**us**)	(corn**ū**)	(curs**ūs**)	(corn**ua**)

472. **Domus**, F.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N.	dom**us**	N.	dom**ūs**
G.	dom**ūs**, dom**ī**	G.	dom**uum**, dom**ōrum**
D.	dom**uī**, dom**ō**	D.	dom**ibus**
Ac.	dom**um**	Ac.	dom**ūs**, dom**ōs**
AB.	dom**ū**, dom**ō**	AB.	dom**ibus**
V.	(dom**us**)	V.	(dom**ūs**)

473. FIFTH DECLENSION.—E STEMS.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
	MASC. & FEM.	
N.	diēs	diēs
G.	diēī	diērum
D.	diēī	diēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus
V.	(diēs)	(diēs)

ADJECTIVES.

474. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

	SINGULAR.		
	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	bonus	bona	bonum
G.	bonī	bonae	bonī
D.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Ac.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Ab.	bonō	bonā	bonō
V.	(bone)	(bona)	(bonum)
	PLURAL.		
N.	bonī	bonae	bona
G.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Ac.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Ab.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
V.	(bonī)	(bonae)	(bona)

SINGULAR.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N.	liber	libera	liberum
G.	liberī	liberae	liberī
D.	liberō	liberae	liberō
Ac.	liberum	liberam	liberum
Ab.	liberō	liberā	liberō
V.	(liber)	(libera)	(liberum)

PLURAL.

N.	liberī	liberae	libera
G.	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
D.	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
Ac.	liberōs	liberās	libera
Ab.	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
V.	(liberī)	(liberae)	(libera)

475. 1. THIRD DECLENSION.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
N.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
Ab.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
V.	(ācer)	(ācris)	(ācre)	(ācrēs)	(ācrēs)	(ācria)

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N.	facilis	facile	facilēs	facilia
G.	facilis	facilis	facilium	facilium
D.	facilī	facilī	facilibus	facilibus
Ac.	facilem	facile	facilīs, -ēs	facilia
Ab.	facilī	facilī	facilibus	facilibus
V.	(facilis)	(facile)	(facilēs)	(facilia)

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audāc**ia**
G.	audāc**is**	audāc**is**	audāc**ium**	audāc**ium**
D.	audācī	audācī	audāc**ibus**	audāc**ibus**
Ac.	audāc**em**	audāx	audācīs, -ēs	audāc**ia**
Ab.	audācī, -**e**	audācī, -**e**	audāc**ibus**	audāc**ibus**
V.	(audāx)	(audāx)	(audācēs)	(audāc**ia**)

2. Declension of Comparatives.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N.	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōr**a**
G.	altiōr**is**	altiōr**is**	altiōr**um**	altiōr**um**
D.	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōr**ibus**	altiōr**ibus**
Ac.	altiōr**em**	altius	altiōrēs, -īs	altiōr**a**
Ab.	altiōr**e**, -ī	altiōr**e**, -ī	altiōr**ibus**	altiōr**ibus**
V.	(altior)	(altior)	(altiōrēs)	(altiōr**a**)

3. Declension of Present Participle.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amant**ia**
G.	amant**is**	amant**is**	amant**ium**	amant**ium**
D.	amantī	amantī	amant**ibus**	amant**ibus**
Ac.	amant**em**	amāns	amantēs	amant**ia**
Ab.	amante, -ī	amante, -ī	amant**ibus**	amant**ibus**
V.	(amāns)	(amāns)	(amantēs)	(amant**ia**)

PRONOUNS.

476. DEMONSTRATIVE.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
G.	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Ac.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Ab.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
G.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
Ac.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Ab.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
G.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
D.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Ac.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Ab.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
G.	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
D.	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
Ac.	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
Ab.	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem / iīdem	eaedem	e'adem
G.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem / iīsdem	eīsdem / iīsdem	eīsdem / iīsdem
Ac.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Ab.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem / iīsdem	eīsdem / iīsdem	eīsdem / iīsdem

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
N.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	N.	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	G.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	D.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
Ac.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	Ac.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	Ab.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

477. RELATIVE.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
Ab.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

478. 1. PERSONAL.

	SINGULAR.	
N.	ego	tū
G.	meī	tuī
D.	mihi	tibi
Ac.	mē	tē
Ab.	mē	tē

	PLURAL.		(SINGULAR AND PLURAL ALIKE.)
N.	nōs	vōs	——
G.	nostrūm, -trī	vestrūm, -trī	suī
D.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
Ac.	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
Ab.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

2. INDEFINITE.

SINGULAR.

N.	aliquis	aliqua	aliquid, aliquod
G.	alicūius	alicūius	alicūius
D.	alicuī	alicuī	alicuī
Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid, aliquod
Ab.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL.

N.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
G.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Ac.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Ab.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

SINGULAR.

N.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam, quoddam
G.	cūiusdam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
D.	cuīdam	cuīdam	cuīdam
Ac.	quendam	quandam	quiddam, quoddam
Ab.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL.

N.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
G.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
D.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Ac.	quōs lam	quāsdam	quaedam
Ab.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

479. NUMERALS.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	**ūnus**	**ūna**	**ūnum**		N. **mīlia**
G.	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	**ūnīus**	mīlle,	G. **mīlium**
D.	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	**ūnī**	indeclinable.	D. **mīlibus**
Ac.	**ūnum**	**ūnam**	**ūnum**		Ac. **mīlia**
Ab.	**ūnō**	**ūnā**	**ūnō**		Ab. **mīlibus**

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
N.	**duo**	**duae**	**duo**	**trēs**	**tria**
G.	**duōrum**	**duārum**	**duōrum**	**trium**	**trium**
D.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**	**tribus**	**tribus**
Ac.	**duōs, duo**	**duās**	**duo**	**trēs**	**tria**
Ab.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**	**tribus**	**tribus**

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1. ūnus, -a, -um	1st. primus, -a, -um
2. duo, duae, duo	2d. secundus (*or* alter)
3. trēs, tria	3d. tertius, -a, -um
4. quattuor	4th. quartus, etc.
5. quinque	5th. quīntus
6. sex	6th. sextus
7. septem	7th. septimus
8. octō	8th. octāvus
9. novem	9th. nōnus
10. decem	10th. decimus
11. ūndecim	11th. ūndecimus
12. duodecim	12th. duodecimus
13. tredecim	13th. tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim	14th. quartus decimus
15. quīndecim	15th. quīntus decimus
16. sēdecim, *or* sexdecim	16th. sextus decimus
17. septendecim	17th. septimus decimus
18. duodēvīgintī	18th. duodēvicēsimus
19. ūndēvīgintī	19th. ūndēvicēsimus

20. vīgintī	20th. vīcēsimus
21. vīgintī ūnus, *or* ūnus et vīgintī	21st. vīcēsimus prīmus, *or* ūnus et vīcēsimus
22. vīgintī duo *or* duo et vīgintī	22d. vīcēsimus secundus, *or* alter et vīcēsimus
28. duodētrīgintā	28th. duodētrīcēsimus
29. ūndētrīgintā	29th. ūndētrīcēsimus
30. trīgintā	30th. trīcēsimus
40. quadrāgintā	40th. quadrāgēsimus
50. quīnquāgintā	50th. quīnquāgēsimus
60. sexāgintā	60th. sexāgēsimus
70. septuāgintā	70th. septuāgēsimus
80. octōgintā	80th. octōgēsimus
90. nōnāgintā	90th. nōnāgēsimus
100. centum	100th. centēsimus
101. centum ūnus *or* centum et ūnus	200th. ducentēsimus
102. centum duo *or* centum et duo	1000th. mīllēsimus
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	800. octingentī, -ae, -a
300. trecentī, -ae, -a	900. nōngentī, -ae, -a
400. quadringentī, -ae, a	1,000. mīlle
500. quīngentī, -ae, -a	2,000. duo mīlia
600. sēscentī, -ae, -a	10,000. decem mīlia
700. septingentī, -ae, -a	100,000. centum mīlia

REGULAR VERBS.

480. First Conjugation.

Principal Parts: **Amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus.**

Stem: **amā-.**

INDICATIVE.

Active Voice.		**Passive Voice.**	
PRESENT TENSE.		PRESENT TENSE.	
I love, I am loving, I do love.		*I am loved, I am being loved.*	
SINGULAR.		SINGULAR.	
amō,	*I love.*	**amor,**	*I am loved.*
amās,	*Thou lovest.*	**amāris,**[1]	*Thou art loved.*
amat,	*He loves.*	**amātur,**	*He is loved.*
PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
amāmus,	*We love.*	**amāmur,**	*We are loved.*
amātis,	*You love.*	**amāminī,**	*You are loved.*
amant,	*They love.*	**amantur,**	*They are loved.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

I loved, was loving, etc.		*I was loved*, etc.	
amābam	**amābāmus**	**amābar**	**amābāmur**
amābās	**amābātis**	**amābāris** *or* **-re**	**amābaminī**
amābat	**amābant**	**amābātur**	**amābantur**

FUTURE TENSE.

I shall love, etc.		*I shall be loved*, etc.	
amābō	**amābimus**	**amābor**	**amābimur**
amābis	**amābitis**	**amāberis** *or* **-re**	**amābiminī**
amābit	**amābunt**	**amābitur**	**amābuntur**

PERFECT TENSE.

I have loved, I loved, etc.		*I have been (was) loved*, etc.	
amāvī	**amāvimus**	**amātus,** { **sum** / **es** / **est**	**amātī,** { **sumus** / **estis** / **sunt**
amāvistī	**amāvistis**	**-a, -um**	**-ae, -a**
amāvit	**amāvērunt** *or* **-re**		

[1] Or **amāre.**

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

I had loved, etc.		*I had been loved*, etc.			
amāv**eram**	amāv**erāmus**	amātus,	**eram**	amātī,	**erāmus**
amāv**erās**	amāv**erātis**	-a, -um	**erās**	-ae, -a	**erātis**
amāv**erat**	amāv**erant**		**erat**		**erant**

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

I shall have loved, etc.		*I shall have been loved*, etc.			
amāv**erō**	amāv**erimus**	amātus,	**erō**	amātī,	**erimus**
amāv**eris**	amāv**eritis**	-a, -um	**eris**	-ae, -a	**eritis**
amāv**erit**	amāv**erint**		**erit**		**erunt**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

am**em**	am**ēmus**	am**er**	am**ēmur**
am**ēs**	am**ētis**	am**ēris** *or* **-re**	am**ēminī**
am**et**	am**ent**	am**ētur**	am**entur**

IMPERFECT.

amār**em**	amār**ēmus**	amār**er**	amār**ēmur**
amār**ēs**	amār**ētis**	amār**ēris** *or* **-re**	amār**ēminī**
amār**et**	amār**ent**	amār**ētur**	amār**entur**

PERFECT.

amāv**erim**	amāv**erimus**	amātus,	**sim**	amātī,	**sīmus**
amāv**eris**	amāv**eritis**	-a, -um	**sīs**	-ae, -a	**sītis**
amāv**erit**	amāv**erint**		**sit**		**sint**

PLUPERFECT.

amāv**issem**	amāv**issēmus**	amātus,	**essem**	amātī,	**essēmus**
amāv**issēs**	amāv**issētis**	-a, -um	**essēs**	-ae, -a	**essētis**
amāv**isset**	amāv**issent**		**esset**		**essent**

Active Voice.	Passive Voice.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

amā, *love thou.*	amāre, *be thou loved.*
amāte, *love ye.*	amāminī, *be ye loved.*

FUTURE.

amātō, *thou shalt love.*	amātor, *thou shalt be loved.*
amātō, *he shall love.*	amātor, *he shall be loved.*
amātōte, *you shall love.*	
amantō, *they shall love.*	amantor, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. amāre, *to love.*	amārī, *to be loved.*
PERF. amāvisse, *to have loved.*	amātum (-am, -um)esse, *to have been loved.*
FUT. amātūrum (-am, -um) esse, *to be about to love.*	amātum īrī, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. amāns, -antis, *loving.*	PERF. amātus, -a, -um, *having been loved.*
FUT. amātūrus, -a, -um, *about to love.*	

	GERUND.	GERUNDIVE.
G.	amandī, *of loving.*	amandus, -a, -um.
D.	amandō, *for loving.*	
AC.	amandum, *loving.*	
AB.	amandō, *by loving.*	

SUPINE.

AC.	amātum, *to love.*
AB.	amātū, *to love.*

CONJUGATION BY ENDINGS.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
PRESENT TENSE.			
am-ō	am-ā-mus	am-o-r	am-ā-mur
" -ā-s	" "-tis	" -ā-ris	" "-minī
" a-t	" a-nt	" "-tur	" a-ntur
IMPERFECT TENSE.			
am-ā-ba-m	am-ā-bā-mus	am-ā-ba-r	am-ā-bā-mur
" " bā-s	" " " -tis	" " bā-ris *or* re	" " "-minī
" " ba-t	" " ba-nt	" " "-tur	" " ba-ntur
FUTURE TENSE.			
am-ā-b-ō	am-ā-bi-mus	am-ā-bo-r	am-ā-bi-mur
" "-bi-s	" " "-tis	" "-be-ris *or* re	" " "-minī
" " "-t	" " bu-nt	" "-bi-tur	" "-bu-ntur
PERFECT TENSE.			
amāv-ī	amāv-imus	amātus, sum	amātī, sumus
" -istī	" -istis	-a, -um es	-ae, -a estis
" -it	" -ērunt[1]	est	sunt
PLUPERFECT TENSE.			
amāv-era-m	amāv-erā-mus	amātus, eram	amātī, erāmus
" erā-s	" " -tis	-a, -um erās	-ae, -a erātis
" era-t	" era-nt	erat	erant
FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.			
amāv-er-ō	amāv-eri-mus	amātus, erō	amātī, erimus
" -eri-s	" " -tis	-a, -um eris	-ae, -a eritis
" " -t	" " -nt	erit	erunt

[1] Or **amāv-ēre.**

481. Second Conjugation.—Ē Verbs.

moneō *advise.*

Principal Parts: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus.**

INDICATIVE.

Active.		Passive.	
PRESENT.			
I advise, etc.		*I am advised*, etc.	
moneō	**monēmus**	**moneor**	**monēmur**
monēs	**monētis**	**monēris** *or* **-re**	**monēminī**
monet	**monent**	**monētur**	**monentur**
IMPERFECT.			
I was advising, etc.		*I was advised*, etc.	
monēbam	**monēbāmus**	**monēbar**	**monēbāmur**
monēbās	**monēbātis**	**monēbāris** *or* **-re**	**monēbāminī**
monēbat	**monēbant**	**monēbātur**	**monēbantur**
FUTURE.			
I shall advise, etc.		*I shall be advised*, etc.	
monēbō	**monēbimus**	**monēbor**	**monēbimur**
monēbis	**monēbitis**	**monēberis** *or* **-re**	**monēbiminī**
monēbit	**monēbunt**	**monēbitur**	**monēbuntur**

PERFECT.

I have advised, I advised, etc. *I have been (was) advised*, etc.

monuī	**monuimus**	monitus, **-a, -um**	**sum**	monitī, **-ae, -a**	**sumus**
monuistī	**monuistis**		**es**		**estis**
monuit	**monuērunt** *or* **ēre**		**est**		**sunt**

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised, etc. *I had been advised*, etc.

monueram	**monuerāmus**	monitus, **-a, -um**	**eram**	monitī, **-ae, -a**	**erāmus**
monuerās	**monuerātis**		**erās**		**eratis**
monuerat	**monuerant**		**erat**		**erant**

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall have advised, etc.			*I shall have been advised*, etc.	
monuerō	monuerimus	monitus, -a, -um	erō	monitī, -ae, -a	erimus
monueris	monueritis		eris		eritis
monuerit	monuerint		erit		erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris *or* -re	moneāminī
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

IMPEFECT.

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris *or* -re	monērēminī
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

PERFECT.

monuerim	monuerimus	monitus, -a, -um	sim	monitī, -ae, -a	sīmus
monueris	monueritis		sīs		sītis
monuerit	monuerint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT.

monuissem	monuissēmus	moni- tus, -a, -um	essem	monitī, -ae, -a	essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis		essēs		essētis
monuisset	monuissent		esset		essent

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

monē, *advise thou.*	monēre, *be thou advised.*
monēte, *advise ye.*	monēminī, *be ye advised.*

FUTURE.

monētō, *thou shalt advise.*	monētor, *thou shalt be adv'd.*
monētō, *he shall advise.*	monētor, *he shall be advised.*
monētōte, *you shall advise.*	———
monento, *they shall advise.*	monentor, *they shall be adv'd.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. monēre, *to advise.*	monērī, *to be advised.*
PERF. monuisse, *to have adv'd.*	monitum (-am, -um) esse, *to have been advised.*
FUT. monitūrum (-am, -um) esse, *to be about to advise.*	monitum īrī, *to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. monēns, -entis, *advising.*	
FUT. monitūrus, -a, -um, *about to advise.*	GER. monendus, -a, -um.
	PERF. monitus, -a, -um, *advised, having been advised.*

GERUND.	SUPINE.
G. monendī, *of advising.*	
D. monendō, *for advising.*	
AC. monendum, *advising.*	AC. monitum, *to advise.*
AB. monendō, *by advising.*	AB. monitū, *to advise, to be advised.*

482. THIRD CONJUGATION.—E-VERBS.

regō, *rule.*

Principal Parts: **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus.**

INDICATIVE.

Active.		Passive.	
PRESENT.			
I rule, etc.		*I am ruled*, etc.	
regō	regimus	regor	regimur
regis	regitis	regeris *or* -re	regiminī
regit	regunt	regitur	reguntur
IMPERFECT.			
I was ruling, etc.		*I was ruled*, etc.	
regēbam, etc.		regēbar, etc.	

(See the same tense of **moneō**.)

FUTURE.

I shall rule, etc.		*I shall be ruled*, etc.	
reg**am**	reg**ēmus**	reg**ar**	reg**ēmur**
reg**ēs**	reg**ētis**	reg**ēris**, *or* **-re**	reg**ēminī**
reg**et**	reg**ent**	reg**ētur**	reg**entur**

PERFECT.

I have ruled, etc.	*I have been ruled.*
rēx**ī**	rēct**us** (**-a**, **-um**) **sum**
rēx**istī**, etc.	rēct**us es**, etc.

(Compare the same tenses of **amō** or **moneō**.)

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled, etc.	*I had been ruled*, etc.
rēx**eram**, etc.	rēct**us** (**-a**, **-um**) **eram**, etc.

(Compare the same tenses of **amō** or **moneō**.)

FUTURE PERFECT.

rēx**erō**, etc. rēct**us** (**-a**, **-um**) **erō**, etc.

(Compare the same tenses of **amō** or **moneō**.)

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

reg**am**	reg**āmus**	reg**ar**	reg**ēmur**
reg**ās**	reg**ātis**	reg**āris** *or* **-re**	reg**āminī**
reg**at**	reg**ant**	reg**ātur**	reg**antur**

IMPERFECT.

reg**erem**	reg**erer**
reg**erēs**, etc.	reg**erēris** *or* **-re**, etc.

(The first **e** of the ending is short; except for this the endings are like those of the same tense in **moneō**.)

PERFECT.

rēx**erim**	rēct**us** (**-a**, **-um**) **sim**
rēx**eris**, etc.	rēct**us sīs**, etc.

(Compare the same tenses of **amō** and **moneō**).

PLUPERFECT.

rēx**issem**, etc. rēct**us** (**-a**, **-um**) **essem**, etc.

(Compare the same tenses of **amō** and **moneō**).

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

rege, *rule thou.*	regere, *be thou ruled.*
regite, *rule ye.*	regiminī, *be ye ruled.*

FUTURE.

regitō, *thou shalt rule.*	regitor, *thou shalt be rnled.*
regitō, *he shall rule.*	regitor, *he shall be ruled.*
regitōte, *ye shall rule.*	
reguntō, *they shall rule.*	reguntor, *they shall be ruled.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. regere, *to rule.*	regī, *to be ruled.*
PERF. rēxisse, *to have ruled.*	rēctum, (-am, -um) esse, *to have been ruled.*
FUT. rēctūrum (-am, -um) esse, *to be about to rule.*	rēctum īrī, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. regēns, -entis, *ruling.*	PRES. ———
FUT. rēctūrus, a, -um, *about to rule.*	GER. regendus, -a, -um.
	PERF. rēctus, -a, -um, *ruled, having been ruled.*

GERUND.	SUPINE.
G. regendī, *of ruling.*	
D. regendō, *for ruling.*	
AC. regendum, *ruling.*	AC. rēctum, *to rule.*
AB. regendō, *by ruling.*	AB. rēctū, *to rule, to be ruled.*

THIRD CONJUGATION. VERBS IN -iō.

483. Verbs of the third conjugation in iō retain the i of the stem before a, o, u, and ē, and in the **gerund** and **present participle.** Hence some of the forms of the present stem are similar to the forms of the fourth conjugation.

484. (See 483.)

Principal parts: **Capiō, capere, cēpī, captum.**

INDICATIVE.

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
PRESENT.			
I take, am taking, do take, etc.		*I am taken,* etc.	
capi**ō**	capi**mus**	capi**or**	capi**mur**
capi**s**	capi**tis**	capi**eris**	capi**minī**
capi**t**	capi**unt**	capi**tur**	capi**untur**
IMPERFECT.			
I took, was taking, did take, etc.		*I was taken,* etc.	
capi**ēbam,** etc.		capi**ēbar,** etc.	
FUTURE.			
I shall take, etc.		*I shall be taken,* etc.	
capi**am**	capi**ēmus**	capi**ar**	capi**ēmur**
capi**ēs**	capi**ētis**	capi**ēris** *or* **-re**	capi**ēminī**
capi**et**	capi**ent**	capi**ētur**	capi**entur**
PERFECT.			
I have taken, took, etc.		*I have been (was) taken,* etc.	
cēp**ī**	cepi**stī,** etc.	capt**us (-a, -um) sum es,** etc.	
PLUPERFECT.			
I had taken, etc.		*I had been taken,* etc.	
cēp**eram,** etc.		capt**us (-a, -um) eram,** etc.	
FUTURE PERFECT.			
I shall have taken, etc.		*I shall been have taken,* etc.	
cēp**erō,** etc.		capt**us (-a, -um) erō,** etc.	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.			
capi**am**	capi**āmus**	capi**ar**	capi**āmur**
capi**ās**	capi**ātis**	capi**āris** *or* **-re**	capi**āminī**
capi**at**	capi**ant**	capi**ātur**	capi**antur**

IMPERFECT.

cap**erem**, cap**erēs**, etc. cap**erer**, -**erēris** *or* -**re**, etc.

PERFECT.

cēp**erim**, cēp**eris**, etc. cap**tus** (-**a**, -**um**) **sim**, **sīs**, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

cēp**issem**, cēp**issēs**, etc. cap**tus** (-**a**, -**um**) **essem**, **essēs**, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cap**e**, *take thou.* cap**ere**, *be thou taken.*
cap**ite**, *take ye.* cap**iminī**, *be ye taken.*
FUT. capitō, *thou shalt take*, etc. capitor, *thou shalt be taken*, etc.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. cap**ere**, *to take.* capī, *to be taken.*
PERF. cēp**isse**, *to have taken.* cap**tum** (-**am**, **um**) **esse**, *to have been taken.*
FUT. cap**tūrum** (-**am**, -**um**) **esse**, *to be about to take.* cap**tum īrī**, *to be about to be taken.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. cap**iēns**, -**ientis**, *taking.* GER. cap**iendus**.
FUT. cap**tūrus**, *about to take.* PERF. cap**tus**, *having been taken.*

GERUND.

G. cap**iendī**, *of taking*, etc.

SUPINE.

AC. cap**tum**, *to take.*
AB. capt**ū**, *to take, to be taken.*

485. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Principal Parts: **Audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus.**

INDICATIVE.

Active Voice.		Passive Voice.	
PRESENT.			
I hear, etc.		*I am heard*, etc.	
audiō	audīmus	audior	audīmur
audīs	audītis	audīris *or* -re	audīminī
audit	audiunt	audītur	audiuntur
IMPERFECT.			
I was hearing, etc.		*I was heard*, etc.	
audiēbam, etc.		audiēbar, etc.	
(See the same tenses of **capiō.**)			
FUTURE.			
I will hear, etc.		*I will be heard*, etc.	
audiam, audiēs, etc.		audiar, audiēris *or* re, etc.	
(See the same tenses of **capiō.**)			
PERFECT.			
I have heard, I heard.		*I have been (was) heard.*	
audīvī, audivistī, etc.		auditus (-a, -um) sum, es, etc.	
PLUPERFECT.			
I had heard, etc.		*I had been heard*, etc.	
audiveram, etc.		auditus (-a, -um) eram, etc.	
FUTURE PERFECT.			
I shall have heard, etc.		*I shall have been heard*, etc.	
audīverō, etc.		auditus (-a, -um) erō etc.	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

audiam, audiās, etc. audiar, audiāris *or* -re, etc.

(See the same tenses of capiō.)

IMPERFECT.

audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris *or* -re	audīrēminī
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur

PERFECT.

audiverim, audiveris, etc. auditus (-a, um) sim, sīs, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

audivissem, etc. auditus (-a, um) essem, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

audī, *hear thou.* audīre, *be thou heard.*

audīte, *hear ye.* audīminī, *be ye heard.*

FUTURE.

audītō, *thou shalt hear.* audītor, *thou shalt be heard.*

audītō, *he shall hear.* audītor, *he shall be heard.*

audītōte, *ye shall hear.* ———

audiuntō, *they shall hear.* audiuntor, *they shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. audīre, *to hear.* audīrī, *to be heard.*

PERF. audīvisse, *to have heard.* auditum (-am, -um) esse, *to have been heard.*

FUT. audītūrum (-am, -um) esse, *to be about to hear.* auditum īrī, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. audiēns, -entis, *hearing.* PERF. auditus, -a, -um, *heard, having been heard.*

FUT. auditūrus, -a, -um, *about to hear.*

GERUND.	GERUNDIVE.
G. audiendī, *of hearing.*	audiendus, -a, -um.
D. audiendō, *for hearing.*	
Ac. audiendum, *hearing.*	
Ab. audiendō, *by hearing.*	

SUPINE.

Ac. auditum, *to hear.*
Ab. auditū, *to hear.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

486. 1. **Sum** (STEMS **es, fu**), *be.*

Principal Parts: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.**

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
sum, *I am.*	sumus, *we are.*
es, *thou art.*	estis, *you are.*
est, *he (she, it) is.*	sunt, *they are.*

IMPERFECT.

eram, *I was,*	erāmus, *we were.*
erās, *thou wast.*	erātis, *you were.*
erat, *he was.*	erant, *they were.*

FUTURE.

erō, *I shall be.*	erimus, *we shall be.*
eris, *thou wilt be.*	eritis, *you will be.*
erit, *he will be.*	erunt, *they will be.*

PERFECT.

fuī, *I have been, I was.*	fuimus, *we have been, we were.*
fuistī, *thou hast been, wast.*	fuistis, *you have been, you were.*
fuit, *he has been, he was.*	fuērunt, or fuēre, *they have been, they were.*

PLUPERFECT.

fueram, *I had been.*	**fuerāmus**, *we had been.*
fuerās, *thou hadst been.*	**fuerātis**, *you had been.*
fuerat, *he had been.*	**fuerant**, *they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

fuerō, *I shall have been.*	**fuerimus**, *we shall have been.*
fueris, *thou will have been.*	**fueritis**, *you will have been.*
fuerit, *he will have been.*	**fuerint**, *they will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.		IMPERFECT.	
sim	**sīmus**	**essem**	**essēmus**
sīs	**sītis**	**essēs**	**essētis**
sit	**sint**	**esset**	**essent**

PERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
fuerim	**fuerimus**	**fuissem**	**fuissēmus**
fueris	**fueritis**	**fuissēs**	**fuissētis**
fuerit	**fuerint**	**fuisset**	**fuissent**

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

es, *be thou.* **este**, *be ye.*

FUTURE.

estō, *thou shalt be.* **estōte**, *ye shall be.*
estō, *he shall be.* **suntō**, *they shall be.*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. **esse**, *to be.*
PERFECT. **fuisse**, *to have been.*
FUTURE. **futūrum**, (**-am**, **-um**) **esse**, *to be about to be.* / **fore.**

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE. **futūrus**, **-a**, **-um**, *being about to be.*

2. **possum, posse, potuī, ——**, *be able, can.*

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	possum	possumus	possim	possīmus
	potes	potestis	possīs	possītis
	potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMP.	poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
FUT.	poterō	poterimus		
PERF.	potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
PLUP.	potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
F. P.	potuerō	potuerimus		

INFINITIVE.

PRES. posse PERF. potuisse

487.

volō, velle, voluī, ——, *be willing, will, wish.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——, *be unwilling, will not.*
mālō, mālle, māluī, ——, *be more willing, prefer.*

	INDICATIVE.		
PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMP.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, volēs, *etc.*	nōlam, nōlēs, *etc.*	mālam, mālēs, *etc.*
PERF.	voluī	nōluī	māluī
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint

SUBJUNCTIVE—(*Continued.*)

IMP.	vellem	nōllem	māllem
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	nōlī	
	nōlīte	
FUT.	nōlītō, etc.	

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns

48f. **Eō,** *go.*

Principal Parts: **Eō, īre, iī** [1](or **īvī**) **(itūrus).**

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	eō	īmus
	is	ītis
	it	eunt
IMPERF.	ībam	
FUT.	ībō	
PERF.	iī (īvī)	
PLUP.	ieram (iveram)	
FUT. PERF.	ierō	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	eam, etc.
IMPERF.	īrem
PERF.	ierim
PLUP.	issem

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	ī	īte
FUT.	ītō	ītōte
	ītō	euntō

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	īre
PERF.	isse
FUT.	itūrum (-am, -um) esse

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	iēns.	GEN. euntis
FUT.	itūrus, -a, -um	

GERUND.

G.	eundī
D.	eundō
AC.	eundum
AB.	eundō

SUPINE.

AC.	itum
AB.	itū

[1] The contracted form is the commoner.

480. **Ferō**, *bear, carry.*

Principal Parts: Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.

	Active.		Passive.	
		INDICATIVE.		
PRES.	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris *or* -re	feriminī
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMPERF.	ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	tulī		lātus (-a, -um) sum	
PLUP.	tuleram		lātus (-a, -um) eram	
FUT. PERF.	tulerō		lātus (-a, -um) erō	
		SUBJUNCTIVE.		
PRES.	feram		ferar	
IMPERF.	ferrem		ferrer	
PERF.	tulerim		lātus (-a, -um) sim	
PLUP.	tulissem		lātus (-a, -um) essem	
		IMPERATIVE.		
PRES.	fer	ferte	ferre	ferimini
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor
		INFINITIVE.		
PRES.	ferre		ferrī	
PERF.	tulisse		lātum (-am, -um) esse	
FUT.	lātūrum (-am, -um) esse		lātum īrī	
		PARTICIPLES.		
PRES.	ferēns		PERF. lātus	
FUT.	lātūrus (-a, -um)			

GERUND.		GERUNDIVE.
G.	ferendī	ferendus
D.	ferendō	
AC.	ferendum	
AB.	ferendō	

SUPINE.

AC.	lātum
AB.	lātū

490. **Fīō,** *be made, become.*

INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRES.	fiō	fīmus	PRES.	fīam
	fīs	fītis		
	fit	fīunt		
IMPERF.	fīēbam		IMPERF.	fierem
FUT.	fīam			
PERF.	factus sum		PERF.	factus sim
PLUP.	factus eram		PLUPERF.	factus essem
FUT. PERF.	factus erō			

IMPERATIVE.			INFINITIVE.	
PRES.	fī	fīte	PRES.	fieri
			PERF.	factum (-am, -um) esse
			FUT.	factum īri

PARTICIPLES.

GERUNDIVE. faciendus, -a, -um
PERFECT. factus, -a, -um.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

Ab., Abl., Ablative.
Ac., Acc., Accusative.
Adj., Adjective.
Adv., Adverb.
Conj., Conjunction.
Cp., Compare.
D., Dat., Dative.
Demon., Demonstrative.
Dep., Deponent.
F., Fem., Feminine.
F. P., Future Perfect.
Fut., Future.
Fut. Perf., Future Perfect.
G., Gen., Genitive.
Imp., Imperf., Imperfect.
Indef., Indefinite.
Interrog., Interrogative.
M., Mas., Masculine.
N., Neut., Neuter.
N., Nom., Nominative.
Perf., Perfect.
Pers., Personal, Person.
Plup., Pluperf., Pluperfect.
Poss., Possessive.
Prep., Preposition.
Pres., Present.
Rel., Relative.
Sing., Singular.
Subj., Subjunctive.
Voc., Vocative.
W., With.

VOCABULARY.

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension*.
Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.
The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "*I.*" are like those of **amō**.
If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as **ab-dūcō, ab-eō**), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as **dūcō, eō**).

ā, ab, prep. w. abl., 80, *by, from*.

ab-dūcō, *lead away*.

ab-eō, *go away*.

ab-ripuit (ab-ripiō), *took* (or *tore*) *off*.

ab-s-tineō (-tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus), *hold back, abstain*.

ab-sum (ab-esse, ā-fuī), 302, *be away, be distant*.

ac, conj., *and*. (Before consonants only.)

ac-cidō (-cidere, -cidī, —), *happen*.

ac-cipiō (-cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus), *receive*.

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *keen, eager* (i-stem).

aciēs, ēī, f., 302, *line of battle*.

ācriter, adv., *keenly, eagerly*.

ad, prep. w. acc., 145, *to* (denoting place to which), *at*. With numerals, *about*.

ad-dūcō, *lead to*.

ad-hibeō (-hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus), *furnish, employ* [**ad-habeō**].

ad-iungō (-iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus), *unite*.

ad-sum (ad-esse, af-fuī), *be present*.

adulēscēns, -ntis, m. (and f.), *young man, youth* (i-stem).

ad-ventus, -ūs, m., *arrival* [**ad-veniō**].

aedificō, I., *build*.

aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., *sick, feeble*.

aegrē, adv., *with difficulty, hardly*.

af-ferō (af-ferre, at-tulī, al-lātum), *bring to* [**ad-ferō**].

af-ficiō (-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus), *affect, some one (in some manner)* [**ad-faciō**].

ager, agrī, m., 59, *field.* Plural, *the country, as distinguished from the town.*

agmen, -inis, n., 158, *army on the march, a marching column.*

āgnōscō, āgnōscere, āgnōvī, āgnōtūs, *recognize.* (Cp. **cōgnōscō**.)

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *conduct, perform, do.*

aliquis, -qua, -quid, indef. pron., *some one, any one.*

alius, -a, -ud (gen., **-īus**), adj., 321, *another, other;* **alius . . . alius**, *one . . . another.*

alter, -era, -erum (gen., **-īus**), adj., *the other (of two)*; **alter . . . alter**, *the one . . . the other.*

altus, -a, -um, adj., 54, *high, deep.*

amat, *loves.*

amīcitia, -ae, *friendship.*

amīcus, -ī, 47, *friend.*

ā-mittō, *lose.*

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus, I., 80, *to like* or *love.*

amplius, adv., *more widely.*

animus, -ī, *mind, consciousness.*

an-nuō (-nuere, -nuī, -nūtus), *to nod.*

annus, -ī, m., 145, *year.*

ante, prep. w. acc., *before.*

ante-signānus, -ī, *a soldier whose position was in front of the standard.*

apertus, -a, -um, adj., *open, exposed.*

ap-pellō, I., *call to, address.*

apud, prep. w. acc., *near to, in the presence of.*

aqua, -ae, 289, *water.*

aquila, -ae, *an eagle. The principal standard of a legion.*

aquilifer, -erī, m. [**aquila, ferō**], *an eagle-bearer or standard-bearer.*

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension.*
Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine.*
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter.*
The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "*I.*" are like those of **amō**.
If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as **ab-dūcō, ab-eō**), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as **dūcō, eō**).

arma, -ōrum (in plural only), 65, *weapons (of all kinds, both for attack and defence)*.

armātūrae. See **levis.**

ascēnsus, -ūs, m., *ascent.*

atque, 91, *and.*

audeō, audēre, ausī, ausus, *dare.*

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus, *hear.*

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, *increase.*

aut, conj., *or;* **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or.*

auxilium, -ī, 116, *aid or help.* Plural usually *auxiliaries or light-armed troops.*

avus, -ī, *grandfather.*

ā-vertō (**-vertere, -vertī, -versus**), *turn away.*

ballista, -ae, *a machine for throwing stones, used in war.*

balteus, -ī, *belt.*

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., 86, *uncivilized.*

bellum, -ī, 71, *war.*

bene, adv. [**bonus**], 247, *well.*

beneficium, -ī [**bene-faciō**], *kindness.*

bonus, -a, -um, adj., 91, 240, *good.*

brevis, -e, adj., *brief* (i-stem).

campus, -ī, *a level place, a plain.*

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, 289, *take.*

captīvus, -ī, 47, *prisoner.*

captus est, *was captured.*

caput, -itis, n., *head.*

cassis, -idis, f., *helmet.*

cāsus, -ūs, m., *accident, misfortune.*

castellum, -ī, *a fortified place, fort.*

castra, -ōrum (in plural only), 111, *camp.*

causa, -ae, *cause.*

celeriter, adv., 247, *quickly.*

celerius, adv., comp. of **celeriter.**

centum, num. adj., indeclinable, *hundred.*

centuriō, -ōnis, m., 321, *centurion.*

certē, adv., *assuredly, surely.*

certus, -a, -um, adj., 348, *certain, trustworthy.*

cibus, -ī, *food.*

citerior, -ius, adj., *hither, nearer.*

circuitus, -ūs, m., *a circuit.*

circum, adv. and prep. w. acc., *around, about.*

circum-eō, circum-veniō, *surround.*

cīvis, -is, m. (and f.), *citizen* (i-stem).
cīvitās, -ātis, f., 377, *a state or nation.*
clam, adv., *secretly.*
classis, -is, f., 171, *fleet* (i-stem).
cōgitō, I., *think.*
cōgnōscō, cōgnōscere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus, 348, *learn about, recognize, examine.*
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus [co-agō], 317, *collect, compel.*
cohors, -rtis, f., 247, *cohort* (i-stem).
collis, -is, m., 158, *hill* (i-stem); **summus collis,** 158, *top of the hill.*
colōnia, -ae, *colony.*
com-, in compounds for **cum.**
coma, -ae, *hair.*
com-mittō, 271, *bring together;* **proelium committere,** *to engage in battle.*
commodus, -a, -um, adj., *convenient, proper.*
com-plūrēs, -a (in plural only), *very many.*
con-cidō (-cidere, -cidī, —), *fall.*
concilium, -ī, 59, *council.*
con-clāmō, I., *exclaim.*
con-currō (-currere, -currī, -cursus), *run together* (*from opposite directions*).
cōn-ficiō (-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus), *to complete, exhaust.*
cōn-firmō, I., *encourage, confirm.*
con-locō, I., 96, *to place, station.*
con-loquium, -ī, *a conference* (**cum-loquor**).
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus, 405, dep., *attempt, try.*
cōnsilium, -ī, 59, *advice, plan, skill, prudence.*
cōn-sistō (-sistere, -stitī, -stitum), *stand, stop.*
cōn-spectus, -ūs, m., *a sight, view.*
cōnstituit, *determined.*
cōn-stituō (-stituere, -stituī, -stitūtus), *establish, station, determine.*

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension.*
Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine,* unless otherwise stated.
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine.*
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter.*
The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "*I.*" are like those of **amō.**
If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as **ab-dūcō, ab-eō**), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as **dūcō, eō**).

cōn-stō (**-stāre, -stetī, -stātus**, Cp. **dō**), *stand firm, stop* (intrans.).

con-tendō (**-tendere, -tendī, -tentum**), 256, *strive, hasten;* sometimes, *to fight.*

continenter, adv., *continuously.*

con-tineō (**-tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus**), 233, *to hold together;* passive also, *is bounded.*

contrā, adv. and prep. w. acc., *opposite to, against.*

con-veniō, *agree, meet.*

con-vocō, I., *call together.*

cōpia, -ae, 41, *abundance;* plural also *troops.*

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn, wing of an army.*

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, *believe.*

cum, conj., *when, since* (causal), *although.*

cum, prep. w. abl., 80, *together with, with* (denoting accompaniment).

cūr? adv., *wherefore?*

cursus, -ūs, m., *a running.*

dare sē in dēditiōnem, *to surrender himself* (*herself*), *themselves.*

dat, *gives.*

dē, prep. w. abl., *from, about, concerning, of.*

decumānus, -a, -um, adj., *of or belonging to the tenth* (*legion*). W. **porta**, *rear.*

dēditiō, -iōnis, f., *surrender.*

dē-fendō (**-fendere, -fendī, -fēnsus**), 256, *defend.*

dē-ferō, *bear away.*

dēfessus, -a, -um, adj., 54, *tired, weary.*

dē-figō (**-figere, -fixī, -fixus**), *fix, fasten.*

dē-iciō (**-icere, -iēcī, -iectus**), *throw down.*

de-inde, adv., *then, secondly.*

dē-mittō, *to lower.*

dē-pōnō, *lay aside, set down.*

dēspērātiō, -ōnis, f., *desperation.*

dē-sum, *fail, lack, be away.*

dexter, -era, -erum, adj., *right* (*hand*).

dīcit, *says.*

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, 264, *say.*

diēs, -ēī, m. and f., 289, *day;* **multō diē**, *late in the day.*

dif-ferō (**dif-ferre, dis-tulī, dī-lātus**), *to change.*

difficilis, -e, adj., *difficult.*

difficultās, -ātis, f., *difficulty.*

dīgnitās, -ātis, f., *dignity.*

dīligenter, adv., *diligently.*

dīligentia, -ae, *diligence.*

dī-mittō, *send away.*

diū, adv., *for a long time.*

diūtius, adv. Comp. of **diū**.
dīxit, *said.*
dō, **dare**, **dedī**, **datus**, 104, *give.*
domus, **-ī** or **-ūs** (see 472), f., 420, *house, home.*
dōnum, **-ī**, *gift.*
dubitō, I., *hesitate.*
dūcō, **dūcere**, **dūxī**, **ductus**, 264, *lead.*
dum, conj., *while.*
duplicō, I., *to double.*
dux, **ducis**, m. and f. (**dūcō**), *a leader.*

ē, **ex**, prep. w. abl., 191, *from, out from, out of.*
edō, **edere**, **ēdī**, **ēsus**, *eat.*
ē-dūcō, *lead away.*
ef-ficiō (**-ficere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectus**), *accomplish, execute, make.*
ego, **meī** (dat., **mihi**; acc., abl., **mē**), pers. pron. *I.*
elephantus, **-ī**, *elephant.*
ē-liciō (**-licere**, **-licuī** or **-lēxī**, **-licitus**), *entice, lure forth.*
eō, **īre**, **īvī** (**iī**), (**itūrus**), 488, *to go.*
eques, **-itis**, m., 133, *horseman.*
equitātus, **-ūs**, m., 264, *cavalry.*
equus, **-ī**, 47, *horse;* **ex equō**, *on horseback.*
erat, *was.*
est, *is.*
et, 41, *and;* **et . . . et**, *both . . . and.*
etiam, adv. and conj., *even.*
ē-vocō, I., *call forth.*
ex. See **ē**.
excellēns, gen. **-ntis**, adj., *excellent.*
ex-cīdō (**-cīdere**, **-cīdī**, **-cīsus**), *cut down.*
ex-cipiō (**-cipere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptus**), *receive, draw out, capture.*
ex-eō, *go away.*
exercitus, **-ūs**, m., 215, *army.*
ex-fugiō, *flee away.*
ex-īstīmō, I., 396, *think, suppose.*
ex-īvit (plural, **-īvērunt**), *went away.*

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension.*
Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine.*
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter.*
The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "*I.*" are like those of amō.
If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as **ab-dūcō**, **ab-eō**), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as dūco, eō).

ex-spectō, I., *await, expect.*
extrā, prep. with acc., *outside.*
extrēmus, -a, -um, adj., 240, *extreme, outermost.*

facilis, -e, adj., 348, *easy* (i-stem).
facile, adv., 247, *easily.*
faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, 294, *do, make.*
factiō, -ōnis, f., (*political*) *party.*
facultās, -ātis, f., 396, *ability, opportunity, supply.*
falsus, -a, -um, adj., *false.*
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *to bear* (489).
ferōculus, -a, -um, adj., *ferocious;* [**ferox**, (*fierce*) **-ulus**, a diminutive here expressing *contempt.*]
fertilis, -e, adj., *fertile.*
fidēs, -eī, f., *trust, trustworthiness.*
fīdus, a, -um, adj., *faithful.*
fīlia, -ae, *daughter.*
fīlius, -ī, 96, *son.*
fīnis, -is, m., 405, *limit, end;* plural, *boundaries*, hence, *country, land* (i-stem).
fīō, fierī, factus, passive of **faciō** (490) *become, be made.*
firmus, -a, -um, adj., *firm.*
flō, I., *blow.*
flūmen, -inis, n., 145, *river.*
forsitan, adv., *perhaps.*
fortis, -e, adj., *brave* (i-stem).
fortiter, adv., *bravely.*
fortūna, -ae, 140, *fortune, chance.*
fortūnātus, -a, -um, adj., *fortunate.*
frāter, frātris, m., *brother.*
frūmentāria, adj., f. See **rēs.**
frūmentum, -ī, n., 65, *grain, provisions.*
frūstrā, adv., *vainly.*
fuga, -ae, *flight.*
fuge, *flee!*
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitus, 363, *flee.*
funditor, -ōris, m., *slinger. A light-armed soldier who threw stones with a sling.*

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, 215, *to do, wage.*
gladius, -ī, 71, *sword.*
glōria, -ae, *glory.*
grātia, -ae, *favor;* **grātiās agere**, *to thank.*
grātus, -a, -um, adj., 54, *pleasing, acceptable* (refers to things and animals).
gravis, -e, adj., *heavy, burdened, severe* (i-stem).
graviter, adv., *heavily, severely.*

habet, *has.*
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, 184, *have.*

habuit (plural **habuērunt**), *has had, had.*

hīc, haec, hōc, demons. pron., *this;* also, as pers. pron., *he, she, it* (476).

hiems, -emis, f., *winter.*

hīberna, -ōrum, n. (in plural only), 65, *winter-quarters.* (The full form, **castra hīberna,** is seldom used.)

hodiē, for **hōc diē,** *to-day.*

homō, -inis, m. (and f.), 145, *man.*

hōra, -ae, *hour.*

hostis, -is, m. (and f.), 165, *enemy* (i-stem).

ibī, adv., 65, *in that place.*

īdem, eadem, idem, demon. pron., *same.*

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., 96, *suitable.* (Referring to places or people.)

īgnis, -is, m., *fire* (i-stem).

ille, illa, illud, demon. pron., *that;* also as pers. pron., *he, she, it* (476).

impedīmentum, -ī, 116.

imperātor, -ōris, m., *a title of honor given to a general by acclamation of the soldiers after his first victory. General-in-chief.*

imperium, -ī, *dominion, rule, supreme command.*

imperō, I., *command.* (Followed by **ut.**)

impetus, -ūs, m., 294, *attack.*

im-pōnō, *place upon, impose.*

in, prep. with acc. and abl., 47; with acc., *into, against;* with abl., *in, on.*

in-, equivalent sometimes to English prefix *un-.*

in-cendit, *burned.*

in-cendō (-cendere, -cendī, -census), *to burn, be angry.*

in columis, -e, *unharmed.*

in-crēbuit, *increased.*

in-crēdibilis, -e, adj. (**crēdō**), *incredible* (i-stem).

īnferior, -ius, adj., 240, *lower.*

īn-ferō (in-ferre, in-tulī, il-lātus), *carry or bring to or into;* **bellum inferre,** *to wage war.*

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension.*
Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine,* unless otherwise stated.
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine.*
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter.*
The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "*I.*" are like those of **amō.**
If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as **ab-dūcō, ab-eō**), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as **dūcō, eō**).

īnfimus, -a, -um, adj., 240, *lowest.*
īnfrā, adv. and prep. w. acc., *below.*
in-īquus, -a, -um, adj., *unequal.*
in-opia, -ae, 140, *lack.*
īn-struō (**-struere, -strūxī, -strūctus**), 302, *construct.* Of troops, *to draw up.*
inter, adv. and prep. w. acc., *among, between.*
inter-eō, *perish.*
interfectus est, *was killed.*
inter-ficiō (**-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus**), 321, *kill.*
interim, adv., *meanwhile.*
inter-īvit (plural **-ivērunt**), *perished.*
inter-mittō, *omit, discontinue.*
inter-pōnō, *place between, interpose.*
inter-sum, *be between.*
intrā, adv. and prep. w. acc., *within, inside.*
ipse, -a, -um, demon. adj. and pron., *self.*
is, ea, id, demon. pron., *this.* Also as pers. pron., *he, she, it* (476).
iste, ista, istud, demon. pron., *that* (*of yours*).
ita, adv., 104, *thus.*
ita-que, conj., *and so, and thus.*
item, adv., *in the same manner.*
iter, itineris, n., 184, *a march, journey, road.*
iterum, adv., *again.*
īvit (plural **ivērunt**), *went.*
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus, *throw.*
iam, adv., *already.*
iūdicō, 1, *judge, examine.*
iūrō, 1., *take an oath.*

labor, -ōris, m., *labor.*
labōrō, I., 86, *to work.*
laetus, -a, -um, adj., *joyful.*
lapis, -idis, n., *stone.*
lātus, -a, -um, adj., *wide.*
laudat, *praises.*
laudō, I., *to praise.*
lēgātus, -ī, 47, *legate, lieutenant, envoy.*
legiō, -ōnis, f., 158, *legion.*
legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj., 289, *belonging to a legion, legionary.*
levis, -e, adj., *light* (*in weight*), (**i**-stem).
levis armātūrae, *light-armed soldiers.*
līber, -era, -erum, adj., 59, *free.* **līberī, -ōrum**, m. (in plu. only), 59, *children.*
lībertās, -ātis, f., *liberty.*
littera, -ae, *letter.*
lītus, -oris, n., 171, *coast.*
locus, -ī (plural **locī** and **loca**), 96, *place, position.*

longus, -a, -um, adj., 54, *long.*
longē, adv., 247, *far, widely.*
loquor, loquī, locūtus, 405, *speak, say.*
lūna, -ae, *moon.*

magis, adv., *more.*
magister, -rī, m., *master.*
māgnus, -a, -um, adj., 54, 240, *large, great.*
māior, -ius, adj., 240, *larger, greater.*
mālō, mālle, māluī, *prefer.*
malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad.*
manipulāris, -e, adj., *of the same* (i-stem) *military company, comrade.*
māximus, -a, -um, adj., 240, *largest, greatest.*
mē, meī. See **ego.**
mēcum. For **cum mē.**
medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle of.*
melior, -ius, adj., 240, *better.*
memoria, -ae, *memory.*
mentiō, -ōnis, f., *mention.*
meus, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron., *my, mine.*
mihi. See **ego.**
mīles, -itis, m., 133, *soldier.*
mīlle (plural **mīlia**, -ium), num. adj., indeclinable in sing., *thousand.*
minimus, -a, -um, adj., superlative of **parvus**, *smallest, least.*
minor, -us, adj. Comparative of **parvus**, *smaller, less.*
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, 215, *send.*
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus, *advise.*
mōns, montis, m., 233, *mountain* (i-stem).
morior, morī, mortuus, dep., *die.*
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move.*
mulier, -eris, f., *woman:* **mulierēs**, nom. and acc. plural, *women.*
multitūdō, -inis, f., *multitude.*
multus, -a, -um, adj., 540, 240, 247, *much;* plural *many.*

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension.*
Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine.*
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter.*
The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "*1.*" are like those of **amō.**
If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as **ab-dūcō, ab-eō**), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as **dūcō, eō**).

mūrus, -ī, 91, *wall.*

nam, adv., *for.*
nātiō, -ōnis, f., *nation.*
nātūra, -ae, *nature* (*of a thing*); **nātū** (abl. of **nātus**), *by birth, in age.*
nauta, -ae, m., *sailor.*
nāvis, -is, f., 177, *ship* (i-stem); **navem solvit** (plural **solvērunt**), *set sail;* **nāvis longa**, *ship of war;* **nāvis onerāria**, *transport, merchant vessel.*
-ne, interrog. adv. Sign of a question (41).
nē, conj., *in order that . . . not.* With verbs of fearing, *lest.* (With subj.) With imperative, *not.*
nec, conj., *and not;* **nec . . . nec**, *neither . . . nor.*
nēmō (dat. **nēmīnī**), m. and f., *no one, nobody.*
ne-que, conj., *and not;* **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor.*
neuter, -tra, -trum, adj., *neither* (*of two*).
nēve, adv., *and not, nor.*
niger, -gra, -grum, adj., *black.*
nihil, n. (indeclinable), *nothing.*
ni-si, conj., *if not, unless, except.*
noceō, nocēre, nocuī [nocitūrus], *injure.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī [nōn-volō], 381, *be unwilling.*
nōn, adv., *not.*
nōn-nūllus, -a, -um, adj., *some, several.*
nōn-numquam, adv., *sometimes.*
nōs, nostrūm (nōbīs). Plural of **ego**, *I.*
noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. and pron., 256, *our.*
novus, -a, -um, adj., 116, *new, strange;* **novissimum agmen**, *rear rank.*
nox, -noctis, f., 165, *night* (i-stem).
nūdus, -a, -um, adj., *bare.*
nūllus, -a, -um, adj. (**nē-ullus**), *none, no one.*
numerus, -ī, 47, *number.*
numquam, adv., *never.*
nunc, adv., *now.*
nūntiō, I., 80, *report, tell.*
nūntius, -ī, 65, *messenger.*

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of.*
obses, -idis, m. and f., 165, *hostage.*
ob-tineō (-tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus), 233, *possess.*
occāsiō, -ōnis, f., *opportunity.*
occupō, I., 86, *seize, take possession of.*

of fĕrō (**of-ferre, ob-tulī, ob-lātus**), *bring forward, offer.*

ōlim, adv., *once, formerly.*

omnis, -e, adj., 171, *all, every* (i-stem).

onerārius, -a, -um, adv. (*something*) *that bears a burden.* See **nāvis.**

opera, -ae, f., *exertion, work.*

opīniō, -ōnis, f., *opinion, belief.*

oppidum, -ī, 54, *town.*

op-pūgnō, I., 86, *to attack.*

optimus, -a, -um, adj., superlative of **bonus**, 240, *best.*

opus, -eris, n., 302, *work.* Also, *need.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech.*

paene, adv., *almost.*

pār, paris, adj., *equal.*

pars, partis, f., 140, *part*, etc., hence *region, place, direction* (i-stem).

parō, I, 171, *prepare.*

parvus, -a, -um, adj., 215, *little, small.*

passus, -ūs, m., *a pace;* **mīlle passuum**, *a Roman mile* (five thousand feet).

pater, -tris, m., *father.*

paucī, -ae, -a, adj., 71, *few.*

paulātim, adv., *little by little, by degrees.*

paulim, adv., **paulō**, adv., } *a little.*

pecūnia, -ae, *money.*

pedes, -itis, m., 133, *foot-soldier.*

pēior, -ius, adj., comparative of **malus**, *worse.*

pellō, pellere, pepulī [cp. **dō**], **pulsus**, *drive out.*

per, prep. w. acc., *through, during, by means of.*

per-dūcō, *conduct to, draw out or lengthen.*

per-exiguus, -a, -um, *very small.*

per-ferō, *convey, endure, complete.*

perīculum, -ī, *danger.*

per-mittō, *permit, give* (*something*) *up to* (*some one*).

per-suādeō (**-suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsus**) (followed by **ut** or **nē**), 377, *persuade.*

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension.*
Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine.*
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter.*
The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "*1.*" are like those of **amō.**
If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as **ab-dūcō, ab-eō**), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as **dūcō, eō**).

per-terreō (-terrēre, -terruī, -territus), *terrify.*
per-tineō (-tinēre, -tinuī, —), 233, *extend.*
per-turbō, I., 321, *disturb greatly, throw into confusion.*
per-veniō, *arrive.*
pēs, **-pedis**, m., 140, *foot.*
pessimus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., superlative of **malus**, *worst.*
petīvit (plural **petīvērunt**), *sought.*
petō, **petere**, **petīvī**, **petītus**, *seek, beg, demand,* (followed by **ut** or **nē**), 256.
pīlum, **-ī**, *a dart* or *javelin.*
polliceor, **pollicērī**, **pollicitus**, dep., *to promise.*
pōnō, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positus**, *to place, put,* 294.
populus, **-ī**, 71, *people.*
porta, **-ae**, *gate;* **portat**, *carries.*
portō, I., 80, *carry.*
possessiō, **-ōnis**, f., *possession.*
possum, **posse**, **potuī** (**potissum**), 317, *be able, can.*
post, adv. and prep. w. acc., *behind, after, afterward.*
post-eā, adv., *afterward.*
posterus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., 240, *next.*
postquam, conj., *after.*
postulō, I., *demand.*
potestās, **-ātis**, f., *power.*
prae, adv. and prep. w. abl., *before.*
praeda, **-ae**, 317, *plunder, booty, loot.*
prae-dīcō, *say or tell beforehand, predict, advise, warn, command.*
prae-dūcō, *lead in front of, show.*
prae-ficiō (**-ficere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectus**), *set over, place in command.*
praemium, **-ī**, *reward.*
prae-mittō, *send before.*
prae-occupō, *seize before.*
prae-sum, *be over, rule.*
praeter, adv. and prep w. acc., *except, contrary to.*
praeter-eā, adv., *besides.*
praeter-mittō, *omit, neglect.*
premō, **premere**, **pressī**, **pressus**, 289, *to press, harass.*
prīmus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., 240, *first.*
prīmō, adv., **prīmum**, adv., *first, at first.*
prīnceps, **-ipis**, m., 133, *a leader, chief.*
prior, **-ius**, adj., 240, *former, previous;* **prius**, adv., *earlier, first.*
prō, prep. w. abl., *before, in front of.*

procul, adv., *far distant, from afar.*
prō-cumbō (**-cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitus**), *fall or lie down.*
prō-cūrrō (**-currere, -cucurrī** [cp. **dō**], **-cursus**), *run forward.*
prō-dūcō, *lead forth.*
proelium, **-ī**, n., 145, *battle.*
proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus, 372, *set out, go.*
pro-hibeō (**-hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitus**), 191, *to keep* (some one) *away* (often with **ex**).
prō-iēcit, *threw.*
prope, adv. and prep. w. acc., *near.*
properat, *hastens.*
properō, I., 165, *hasten, hurry.*
propior, -ius, adj., *nearer.*
propter, prep. w. acc., *because of.*
prōvincia, -ae, *province.*
prō-videō, *foresee, provide for.*
proximus, -a, -um, adj., *next, nearest* (*last*).
pūblicus, -a, -um, adj., *public.* (See **rēs**.)
puella, -ae, *girl.*
puer, -ī, m., *boy.*
pūgna, -ae, 86, *a fight.*
pūgnat, *fights* (3d person).
pūgnō, I, 80, *to fight.*
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful.*
pulvis, -eris, m., *dust.*
putō, I., *suppose, think.*

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *ask, inquire;* also *seek* (followed by **ut**).
quam, adv., 226, *than.* With superlative *as ... as possible.*
-que, conj., 91, *and.*
quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what.*
quid? *what? why?*
quīdam, quaedam, quid-(quod)dam, indef. pron., *a certain* (*one*), *a.*
quis, quae, quid (**quod**), interrog. pron. and adj., *who? which? what?*

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension.*
Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine.*
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter.*
The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "*I.*" are like those of **amō**.
If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as **ab-dūcō, ab-eō**), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as **dūcō, eō**).

quisquam, quaequam, quid-(quod) quam, indef. pron., *any, any one.*

quisque, quaeque, quid-(quod)que, indef. pron., *each one, each, every.*

quod, conj., 396, *because.*

quoniam, adv., 158, *because.*

quoque, conj., *also.*

ratiō, -ōnis, f., *plan, nature (of something), affair, opinion.*

re-, in compounds as a prefix, *again.*

recēpit. See **sē.**

re-cipiō (cipere, -cēpī, -ceptus), 321, *take back, receive.*

rēctus, -a, -um, adj., *straight, direct.*

re-cuperō, I., *recover.*

re-d-eō, *go back.*

re-dūcō, *lead back.*

re-ficiō (-ficere, -fēcī, -fectus), *refit, refresh.*

rēgīna, -ae, *queen.*

regiō, -ōnis, f., 171, *region.*

re-linquō (-linquere, -līquī, -lictus), 317, *leave behind.*

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. (cp. **relinquō**), 165, *remaining, the rest of.*

re-periō (-perīre, -perī, -pertus), *find out.*

rēs, reī, f., 271, *thing, state of affairs;* **rēs frūmentāria,** *provisions;* **rēs pūblica,** *government* (at Rome).

re-spondeō (-spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsus), *to reply.*

re-vocō, I., *call back, recall.*

rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*

rīvus, -ī, *stream.*

rosa, -ae, *rose.*

rūrsus, adv., *again, back again.*

sacrāmentum, -ī, *the oath of allegiance to the general-in-chief taken by a Roman soldier when he enlisted.*

saepe, adv., *often.*

saepius, adv., *more or too frequently.*

sagittārius, -ī, *archer.*

sāl, sālis, m., *salt.*

salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety.*

sānitās, -ātis, f., *soundness (of mind or body).*

satis, adv., *enough.*

scelus, -eris, n., *crime.*

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *know, perceive.*

scūtum, -ī, *shield.*

sē (or **sēsē**), acc. of reflexive pron. of third pers., *himself, herself, itself, themselves* (478); **sē recēpit** (plural **recēpērunt**),

retreated. (Cp. English "*to betake one's self.*")

sēcernō, sēcernere, sēcrēvī, sēcrētus, *to separate.*

sēcum, for **cum sē.**

secundus, -a, -um, adj., *favorable, second.*

sed, conj., 65, *but.*

semper, adv., *always.*

senātus, -ūs, m., *senate.*

septimus, -a, -um, adj., 479.

sequor, secutus sum, dep., 372, *follow.*

servātus est, *was saved.*

servō, I., *save.*

sēsē. See **sē.**

sī, conj., *if.*

sīc, adv., *thus.*

signum, -ī, 104, *standard or ensign, signal.*

silva, -ae, 41, *wood, forest.*

sine, prep. w. abl., *without.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left* (hand).

sōlus, -a, -um, adj., *alone, single.*

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, *to loose.* See **nāvis.**

soror, -ōris, f., *sister.*

spatium, -ī, *space.*

spērō, I., *look for, hope.*

spēs, speī, f., *hope.*

sponte (abl.), always with **meā, tuā, suā,** etc., *of (one's) free will, voluntarily.*

statim, adv , *immediately.*

statiō, -ōnis, f., *a guard, sentry;* **in statiōne,** *on guard.*

stō, stāre, stetī, status (cp. **dō**), *to stand.*

studium, -i, 86, *study, zeal.*

stultissimus, -a, -um, adj. (superlative of **stultus**), *most stupid, idiotic.*

stultus, -a, -um, adj., *stupid.*

sub, prep. w. acc. and abl., *under.*

sūb-iciō (**-icere, -iēcī, -iectus**), *place under, expose* [**sub-iaciō**].

subitō, adv., 247, *suddenly.*

suf-ferō (**suf-ferre, sus-tulī, sub-lātus**), *offer, sustain, endure* [**sub-ferō**].

sum-moveō (**-movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus**), *remove, drive back* [**sub-moveō**].

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension.*
Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine.*
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter.*
The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "*I.*" are like those of **amō.**
If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as **ab-dūcō, ab-eō**), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as **dūcō, eō**).

sus-tineō (-tinēre, -tinuī, -tentus), 372, *hold out against.*
sub-veniō, *come to one's assistance.*
summa, -ae, *amount, total.*
summus, -a, -um, adj., 145, *highest, top of.*
sunt, *are.*
superior, -ius, adj., 240, *higher.*
superō, I., 104, *surpass, conquer.*
super-sum, *remain over, be left over, survive.*
suprā, adv. and prep. w. acc., *above.*
suus, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron., 191, *his, her, hers, its, their, theirs.*

tabernāculum, -ī, *tent.*
tam, adv., *to such a degree, so.*
tamen, adv., *nevertheless.*
tandem, adv., *finally.*
tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so much.*
tantum, adv., *only.*
tardō, I., *retard.*
tēcum, for **cum tē.**
tēlum, -ī, 65, *weapon, especially a javelin.*
tempestās, -ātis, f., *storm, weather.*
temptō, I., 133, *try.*
tempus, -oris, n., 191, *time.*
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus, 191, *hold, keep.*
terra, -ae, 41, *land, country.*
tertius, -a, -um, adj., *the third.*
timeō, timēre, timuī, 335, *to fear.*
tīrō, -ōnis, m., *recruit, inexperienced soldier* (sometimes used in contempt).
tōtus, -a, -um, adj., *whole, all, entire.*
trā-dūcō, *lead across.*
trāns, prep. w. acc., *across.*
trāns-eō, *go across.*
trāns-fīgō (-fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxus), *pierce through.*
trāns-portō, I., *carry across.*
tribūnus, -ī, 71, *tribune.*
tū, tuī (tibi, tē), pers. pron., *thou, you.*
tuba, -ae, *trumpet.*
tum, adv., *then* (of time).
tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *safe.*
tuus, -a, -um, poss. adj. and pron., *thy, thine, your, yours.*

ubi, adv., *where.*
ullus, -a, -um, adj., *any* (*one*).
ulterior, -ius, adj., *further.*
ultrā, adv., *beyond, further.*
ultrō, adv., *moreover, of one's own accord.*

umerus, -ī, *shoulder.*

ūnus, -a, -um, num. adj., *one, alone;* **ad ūnum,** *to the last one* (479).

urbs, urbis, f., 184, *city* (i-stem).

ūsus, ūsūs, m., *use, value.*

ut, conj., with subj., *in order that, so that.*

uter, utra, utrum, interrog. pron., *which* (of two)?

uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron., *each* (of two), *both.*

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, dep., 372, *to use, employ.*

utrum, adv., *whether;* **utrum... an,** *whether... or.*

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife.*

vāgīna, -ae, *scabbard.*

vallis, -is, f., *valley* (i-stem).

vāllum, -ī, *the rampart or wall of a camp.*

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus, 355, *come.*

venit (plural **veniunt**), *comes.*

vēnit (plural **vēnērunt**), *came.*

vērō, adv., **vērum,** adv., } *truly.*

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, *turn, turn around or about.*

vērum, -ī, neuter of adj. used as noun, *the truth.*

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. and pron., *your, yours* (of more than one person).

veterānus, -a, -um, adj., *veteran.*

via, viae, 41, *way, road, street.*

victor, -ōris, m., *victor.*

victōria, -ae, *victory.*

vidē, *see!*

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *to see.*

vīdit (plural **vīdērunt**), *saw.*

vir, virī, m., 59, *man;* sometimes, *hero.*

virtūs, virtūtis, f., 140, *manliness, bravery.*

vīta, vītae, *life.*

vītō, I., *avoid.*

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, victus, *live.*

The *genitives* of nouns are given, to indicate the *declension.*
Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine.*
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter.*
The principal parts of *verbs* of the *first conjugation* marked "*I.*" are like those of **amō.**
If the principal parts of a compound verb are not given (as **ab-dūcō, ab-eō**), it is because they are similar to those of the verb from which they are derived (as **dūcō, eō**).

vīvus, -a, -um, adj., *alive.*
vix, adv., *scarcely.*
volō, velle, voluī, 381, *wish, be willing.*
vulnerat, *wounds.*
vulnerō, I., 80, *to wound.*
vulnus, -eris, n., *wound.*

ADDENDA.

an, adv., *or.*
aptus, -a, -um, adj., *suited, fit.*
arx, arcis, *citadel* (**i** stem).
circiter, adv. and prep. w. acc., *about, around.*
con-loquor, dep., *converse, confer.*
contrōversia, -ae, *dispute, argument.*
duo, duae, duo, num. adj., *two* (297).
fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring.*
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, dep. w. abl. (370), *enjoy.*
fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, dep. w. abl. (370), *do, perform.*
īgnorāns, -antis, *ignorant.*
impediō, impedīre, impedīvī, impedītum, *entangle, hinder.*
īnsula, -ae, *island.*
miser, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched.*
multō, multum, advs. 247, *much.*
nātus est, *was born.*
per-ficiō (-ficere, -fēcī, -fectum), *finish.*
per-sequor, dep., *follow up, accomplish.*
plūrimus, -a, -um; **plūs, plūris**, adjs. See 228 and 240.
plūs, adv., *more.*
potior, potīrī, potītus sum, dep. w. abl. (370), *gain possession of.*
praesidium, -ī, *defence, protection.*
prīncipātus, -ūs, m., *headship.*
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever.*
quis, quae, quid, 113, sometimes means *anyone, anything.*
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, 482, *to rule.*
sum, esse, fuī, 486, *to be.*

PROPER NAMES.

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.
Nouns of the *third* declension are *masculine*, unless otherwise stated.

Aduatuca, **-ae**, *a camp established by Caesar among the Eburones.*

Aeduī, **-ōrum**, *a large tribe in Gaul which during the conquest of Gaul by Caesar was for the most of the time in alliance with the Romans.*

Aeginurus, **-ī**, *an island near the Roman province of Africa.*

Afrānius, **-ī**, *one of Pompey's lieutenants, who fought against Caesar in Spain.*

Āfrica, **-ae**, *a Roman province (modern Tunis and eastern Morocco).*

Āfricus, **-ī**, *the west-southwest wind.*

Alexandria, **-ae**, *the metropolis of Egypt.*

Alliēnus, **-ī**.

Allobrogēs, **-um**, *a Gallic tribe living in the valley of the Rhodanus or Rhone, and subject to the Roman power.*

Alpēs, **-ium**, *the Alps.*

Ambiānī, **-ōrum**, *a tribe in Gaul.*

Antonius, **-ī**, *a lieutenant of Caesar's; who later delivered the funeral oration over Caesar's body (see Shakespeare, "Julius Caesar"); rose as a triumvir to supreme power over the eastern half of the Roman dominion, and was finally defeated with Cleopatra by Octavius, the first Roman emperor, at Actium.*

Anquillaria, -ae, *a town in Epirus.*

Apollonia, -ae, *a town in Epirus.*

Apsus, -ī, *a river in Epirus.*

Aquītānus, -a, -um, *an inhabitant of Aquitania.*

Aquītānia, -ae, *the southwestern portion of Gaul.*

Arar, Araris, *a tributary of the river Rhodanus (Rhone).*

Ariovistus, -ī, *a German chief who invaded Gaul, but was defeated by Caesar.*

Aristius, -ī.

Arnus, -ī, *the river Arno, in Italy.*

Arvernī, -ōrum, *a Gallic tribe.*

Asia, -ae, *a Roman province in western Asia Minor.*

Atrebātēs, -um, *a tribe in Gaul.*

Aulus, -ī,

Auster, -trī, *the south wind.*

Baculus, -ī.

Bagradas, -ae, *a river in the Roman province of Africa.*

Belgae, -ārum, *the inhabitants of northeastern Gaul.*

Bellovacī, ōrum, *a tribe of the Belgae.*

Bibracte, -is, *the capital of the Aedui.*

Bibulus, -ī.

Boiī, -ōrum, *a tribe which took part with the Helvetii in the invasion of central Gaul.*

Brittania, -ae, *Britain, at the time of Caesar covered with dense forests and inhabited by tribes of the same race as the Gauls.*

Caeroesī, -ōrum, *a tribe of Gaul.*

Caesar, -aris. (1) *Caius Julius Caesar.* (2) *Lucius Caesar, commander of a fleet stationed off the coast of Africa to oppose Curio's invasion of that province.*

Cāius, -ī.

Calēnus, -ī, *a lieutenant of Caesar.*

Candavia, -ae, *a district in eastern Epirus.*

Cannae, -ārum, *the scene of the great defeat of the Romans by Hannibal.*

Carnūtēs, -um, *a tribe in Gaul.*

Carthāgō, -inis, *Carthage, a*

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.
Nouns of the *third* declension are *masculine*, unless otherwise stated.

great commercial city and bitter rival of Rome.

Casticus, -ī.

Castra Cornēlia, *a place upon the coast near Utica, in the Roman province of Africa.*

Ceutrōnēs, **-um**, *a tribe in Gaul.*

Christus, -ī, *Christ.*

Cicerō, **ōnis**, *a lieutenant of Caesar, and brother of the famous orator.*

Cilicia, -ae, *a country in southern Asia Minor.*

Claudius, -ī.

Cleopatra, -ae, *a famous queen of Egypt.*

Clupea, -ae. *a town in the Roman province of Africa.*

Cnaeus, -ī.

Cominius, -ī.

Commius, -ī.

Cōnsidius, ī.

Coponius, -ī.

Cornēlia, -ae.

Crassus, -ī.

Crastīnus, ī.

Crēta, -ae, *the island of Crete.*

Curiō, **-ōnis**, *a lieutenant of Caesar, in command of an army which invaded the Roman province of Africa.*

Dācī, **-ōrum**, *the inhabitants of Dacia, east of the river Danube.*

Divitiacus, -ī, *a chief of the Aedui.*

Domitius, -ī.

Dumnorix, **-rīgis**, *a chief of the Aedui; the brother of Divitiacus.*

Dyrrhachium, -ī, *a town in Epirus.*

Eburōnēs, **-um**, *a tribe of the Belgae.*

Ēpīrus, -ī, *a district bordering the Adriatic Sea, north of Greece.*

Fabius, -ī.

Galba, -ae, m.

Gallia, -ae, *the country of Gaul.*

Gallī, **-ōrum**, *the Gauls.*

Garumna, -ae, *a river in Gaul, now the Garonne.*

Genāva, -ae, *a town on the borders of Helvetia, now Geneva.*

Germānia, -ae, *Germany: at the time of Caesar covered with forests and inhabited by many semi-savage tribes.*

Germānī, **-ōrum**, *the inhabitants of Germany.*

Graecia, -ae, *the country of Greece.*

Graecī, **-ōrum**, *the Greeks.*

Hadrumentum, -ī, *a town in Africa.*

Hamilcar, -āris, *a Carthaginian general: the father of Hannibal.*

Hannibal, -alis, *the invader of Italy, during Rome's second war with Carthage.*

Hasdrubal, -ālis, *the brother of Hannibal: commander in Spain during the second war of Carthage with Rome.*

Helvētia, -ae, *a district of Gaul; the modern Switzerland.*

Helvētiī, -ōrum, *the inhabitants of Helvetia.*

Hercynia silva, *a great forest along the upper Danube.*

Herminius, -ī.

Hispānia, -ae, *Spain: a province of the Roman dominion.*

Hispānus, -ī, *Spaniard.*

Ilerda, -ae, *a town in Spain, now Lerida.*

Ītalia, -ae, *Italy.*

Iuba, -ae, m., *King of the tribes living north of the Sahara desert and south and west of the Roman province of Africa.*

Labiēnus, -ī, *one of Caesar's most trusted lieutenants in the conquest of Gaul; but during the civil war one of his bitterest enemies.*

Latīnī, -ōrum, *the inhabitants of Latium, the district to the south of Rome.*

Libō, -ōnis.

Licinius, -ī.

Lingonēs, -um, *a Gallic tribe.*

Lūcius, -ī.

Macedonia, -ae, *a Roman province.*

Manilius, -ī.

Mārcus, -ī.

Menapiī, -ōrum, *a Gallic tribe.*

Morinī, -ōrum, *a Gallic tribe.*

Nymphaeum, -ī, *a place in Epirus.*

Ōceanus, -ī, *the Atlantic Ocean.*

Oricum, -ī, *a town in Epirus.*

Padus, -ī, *the river Po, in north Italy.*

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.
Nouns of the *third* declension are *masculine*, unless otherwise stated.

Palaeste, -ēs, f.. *a harbor of Epirus.*
Petrōnius, -ī.
Petrosidius, -ī.
Pharsalia, -ae, *a place in Thes aly, where Caesar defeated Pompey.*
Pharsalicus, -a, -um, adj., *of Pharsalia.*
Pīsō, -ōnis.
Plancus, -ī.
Pompēius, -ī, *the famous general, a contemporary, and finally the opponent of Caesar.*
Prōvincia, -ae, *the Province: referring to the Roman province in Southern Gaul, of which Caesar was governor at the beginning of his conquest of the Gauls.*
Ptolemaeus, -ī. *Ptolemy, the title of the kings of Egypt.*
Publius, -ī.
Pullō, -ōnis.

Quintilius, -ī.

Rebilus, -ī.
Rēgulus, -ī.
Rēmī, -ōrum, *a tribe in Gaul.*
Rēmus, -ī.
Rhēnus, -ī, *the river Rhine.*
Rōma, -ae, *the city Rome.*
Rōmānī, -ōrum, *the Romans.*
Rūfus, -ī.

Saburra, -ae, -m, *a lieutenant of King Juba, an opponent of Curio*
Salōnae, -ārum, *a town upon the Adriatic Sea.*
Scīpiō, -ōnis, *a Roman general who fought with Hasdrubal in Spain, and finally defeated Hannibal at Zama.*
Sēquanī, -ōrum, *a Gallic tribe.*
Sextius, -ī.
Sextus, -ī.
Sicilia, -ae, *the island of Sicily.*
Staberius, -ī.
Suēbī, -ōrum, *a tribe of Germans.*
Sugambrī, -ōrum, *a tribe of Germans.*
Sulla, -ae, m., *a famous Roman general, of the generation before Caesar.*
Syria, -ae, *a Roman province.*
Syriacus, -a, -um, adj. *Syrian.*

Thapsus, -ī, *a town in the Roman province of Africa.*
Thessalia, -ae, *Thessaly.*
Thracia, -ae, *the country of Thrace.*
Thrāx, **Thrācis**, *an inhabitant of Thrace.*
Tiber, -is, *the river Tiber.*
Ticida, -ae.
Ticīnus, -ī.
Tigurīnī, -ōrum, *a sub-tribe or canton of the Helvetii.*

Titurius, -ī.
Titus, -ī.
Trēverī, **-ōrum**, *a tribe of the Belgae.*
Tulingī, **-ōrum**, *a tribe which joined with the Helvetii in the invasion of central Gaul.*
Tusculum, -ī, *a town in Latium.*

Usipitēs, **-um**, *a tribe of Germans.*
Utica, **-ae**, *a large city in the Roman province of Africa.*

Vārus, -ī, *a lieutenant of Pompey, opposed to Curio in the Roman province of Africa.*
Valerius, -ī.
Vēlocassī, **-ōrum**, *a tribe of Gaul.*
Volcae Tectosagēs, *a tribe of Gauls living in Germany.*
Vorēnus, -ī.

Zama, **-ae**, *a place near Carthage, where Hannibal was defeated by Scipio.*

Nouns of the *first* declension are *feminine*, unless otherwise stated.
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-us* are *masculine*.
Nouns of the *second* declension in *-um* are *neuter*.
Nouns of the *third* declension are *masculine*, unless otherwise stated.

RULES OF SYNTAX

ARRANGED SYSTEMATICALLY FOR READY REFERENCE.

A. denotes Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar; B., Bennett's[1]; G., Gildersleeve's; H., Harkness'.[2]

28. Appositives agree in case with the nouns which they limit. A. 183, 184. B. 169. 2. G. 321. H. 393.

30. A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case. A. 183, 185. B. 168. G. 325. H. 393.

109. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands. A. 198. B. 250. G. 614. H. 396.

NOMINATIVE.

21. The nominative is the case of the subject. A. 173. B. 166. G. 203. H. 387.

ACCUSATIVE.

22. The direct object of a verb is put in the accusative. A. 237. B. 173. G. 328 H. 404.

261. Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative. A. 256, 257. B. 181. G. 335, 336. H 417.

340. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. A. 173. 2. B. 330, 331. G. 420. H. 414, 415.

[1] School edition. [2] Revised edition.

360. With names of towns, the place to which is expressed by the accusative without a preposition. A. 258. *b*. B. 182. G. 337. H. 418.

DATIVE.

23. The indirect object of a verb is put in the dative. A. 255. B. 187. G. 345, 348. H. 424.

35. The dative is used with **sum** to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject. A. 231. B. 190. G. 349. H. 430.

375. Most verbs meaning to favor, please, believe, trust, help, and their opposites; also, to persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, and the like, are followed by the dative. A. 227. B. 187. II. *a*. G. 346. H. 426.

399. The end or purpose which an object serves may be denoted by the dative. A. 233. B. 191. G. 356. H. 433.

400. Many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub,** and **super** are followed by the dative. A. 228. B. 187. III. G. 347. H. 429.

456. The agent with the gerundive is expressed by the dative. A. 232. B. 189. G. 355. H. 431.

GENITIVE.

149. A person or thing may be described by the ablative or the genitive of a noun, if an adjective be used with the noun. A. 215. B. 203. G. 365. H. 440. 3.

ABLATIVE.

69. The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative. A. 248. c. I. B. 218. G. 401. H. 476.

78. The agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**. A. 246. B. 216. C. 401. H. 467.

89. The manner of an action is expressed by the ablative with **cum**, unless an adjective is used with the ablative, when **cum** may be omitted. A. 248. B. 220. G. 399. H. 473. 3.

137. Cause may be expressed by the ablative. A. 245. B. 219. G. 408. H. 475.

149. A person or thing may be described by the ablative or the genitive of a noun, if an adjective be used with the noun. A. 251. B. 224. G. 400. H. 473. 2.

174. Time when, or within which, is expressed by the ablative. A. 256. B. 230, 231. G. 393. H. 486.

194. The ablative of specification is used to point out in what respect a statement is true. A. 253. B. 226. G. 397. H. 480.

222. The ablative is used with comparatives in the sense of "than" when **quam** is omitted. A. 247. B. 217. G. 398. H. 471.

370. **Utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,** and their compounds, govern the ablative. A. 249. B. 218. 1. G. 407. H. 477. I.

418. Separation is expressed by the ablative, often without a preposition. A. 243. B. 214. G. 390. H. 461, 464.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.

447. Commands are put in the imperative or subjunctive; appeals in the subjunctive. The negative is **nē**. A. 266, 269. B. 275, 281. G. 260, 263, 266–270. H. 559, 560.

438. An indirect question takes the subjunctive. A. 334. B. 300, 315. 1. G. 467. H. 649. II. 650.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

411. A primary tense in the main clause is followed by the present or perfect subjunctive.

A secondary tense in the main clause is followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive. A. 285, 286. B. 267. G. 509–511. H. 543–545.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

279. Purpose is expressed by **ut** and **nē** with the subjunctive. A. 317, 331. B. 282, 295, 296. G. 545–548. H. 568.

309. The result of an action is expressed by the subjunctive with **ut** and **ut nōn**. A. 319, 332. B. 284, 297. G. 551–553. H. 570, 571.

425. Relative clauses of purpose, result, cause, and characteristic take the subjunctive. A. 317. 2, 319. 2, 320. B. 282. 2, 284. 2, 283. G. 630, 631, 633. H. 590, 591. 1, 2, 592.

353. The subjunctive with **ut** or **nē** is used after verbs of fearing; **ut** meaning "that not," and **nē** "that" or "lest." A. 331 f. B. 296. 2. G. 550. H. 567.

384. (**Cum**, temporal.) **Cum**, meaning "when," is followed by the subjunctive if the tense is the imperfect or pluperfect, otherwise by the indicative. A. 325. B. 288, 289. G. 580, 585. H. 600.

427. (**Cum**, causal or concessive.) **Cum**, when it means "since" or "although," is used with the subjunctive. A. 326. B. 286. 2, 309. 3. G. 586, 587. H. 598.

449. In indirect discourse, the subjunctive of appeals and commands remains a subjunctive.

The imperative is, in indirect discourse, changed to the subjunctive. A. 339. B. 316, 654, 652. H. 642.

413. The subordinate clauses of an indirect statement have their verbs in the subjunctive, and conform to the rule for the sequence of tenses. A. 336. 2. B. B. 314, 318. G. 508, 509. H. 643, 644.

443. II. Less vivid future conditions take the present subjunctive in both condition and conclusion. A. 307. 2. B. 303. G. 596. H. 576.

443. III. Conditions contrary to fact take the imperfect subjunctive when referring to present time, and the pluper-

fect subjunctive when referring to past time. A. 308. B. 304. G. 597. H. 579.

THE INFINITIVE.

340. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative. A. 173. 2. B. 330, 331. G. 420. H. 414, 415.

346. The tenses of the infinitive in indirect statements denote past, present, or future, relatively to the time denoted by the verb of saying. A. 336. A. B. 317. G. 530, 531. H. 617–620.

INDIRECT STATEMENTS.

341. Statements after verbs and other expressions of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving are called Indirect Statements. A. 335, 336. B. 313, 314. G. 648. H. 641, 649.

413. The main verb of an indirect statement is put in the infinitive with subject accusative, and depends upon the verb or expression of saying, thinking, or perceiving. A. 336. 2. B. 314. G. 650. H. 642.

346. The tenses of the infinitive in indirect statements denote past, present, or future, relatively to the time denoted by the verb of saying. A. 336. A. B. 317. G. 530, 531. H. 617–620.

413. The subordinate clauses of an indirect statement have their verbs in the subjunctive, and conform to the rule for the sequence of tenses. A. 336. B. B. 318. G. 508, 509. H. 643, 644.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

443. I. Simple conditional sentences take the indicative in both condition and conclusion. A. 306, 307. I. B. 302. G. 595. H. 574.

443. II. Less vivid future conditions take the present sub-

junctive in both condition and conclusion. A. 307. 2. B. 303. G. 596. H. 576.

443. III. Conditions contrary to fact take the imperfect subjunctive when referring to present time, and the pluperfect subjunctive when referring to past time. A. 308. B. 304. G. 597. H. 579.

THE GERUNDIVE.

455. The gerundive is used with the verb **sum** to form the passive (or second) periphrastic conjugation, denoting obligation or duty. A. 113. *d.* I. 129. B. 115, 337. 7. G. 251. H. 621.

456. The agent with the gerundive is expressed by the dative. A. 232. B. 189. G. 215. 2, 355. H. 431.

INDEX.

References are to paragraphs.

A.

a, stem-vowel, 19, *d*.
-a, 142, *a*; 431, 2.
-ā, 431, 2.
ā, ab., 78.
ab-sum, 400, *b*.
Ablative, 431, 2; Absolute, 403.
of Agent, 77; 78.
of Cause, 137; 431, 2.
with Comparatives, 223.
with certain Deponents, 370.
Descriptive, 149.
with **in**, 31.
of Manner, 89.
of Means or Instrument, 68; 69; 77, *a*; 431, 2.
of Separation, 418.
of Specification, 194.
of Time, 174.
Accent, 8,
Accusative; Direct Object, 16, 22.
with **in**, 38.
of Place Whither, 360.
of Time and Space, 261.
Subject of Infinitive, 340.
ācer, 160.
Active Periphrastic Conjugation, 453.
Active Voice defined. 73, *a*.
Action; completed, 359, *b*.
incompleted, 275.
ad with Gerundive and Gerund, 39`.
Adjectives; 82, *a*; 89; 149, *a*; 169; 431, 1, 2.
Agreement of, 3, *a*; 16, *e*.
Comparing of; regular, 219; 220; 230; irregular, 228; 235; 237.
Adjectives; Demonstrative, 94; 100; 120; 121.
of First and Second Declensions, 50; 51.
Interrogative, 114.
Irregular, 125.
Predicate, 52.
Possessive, 285.
Reason for terminations, 50, *b*.
of Third Declension, 160; 167.
Adverbs; 230; comparing of, 249; formation of, 242; 243.
Agent; Ablative of, 77; 78.
Dative of, 456.
ager, 56.
Agreement; of adjectives, 13, *a*; 16, *c*; 50, *b*; of relative pronouns, 109; of verbs, 63.
aliquis, 124.
alius, 125.
Allied Words; Use explained, 131.
altior, 221.
Alphabet, 1.
amāns, 358.
amō, 73; 82.
Antecedent, 108.
Antepenult, 6, 3; 8, 3.
Appeal of Divitiacus, 414.
Appeal of Gauls to Caesar, 350.
Appeals, 447; in indirect discourse, 449.
Apposition, 27; 28.
Article wanting, 13, *b*.
-ās, 431, 2.
audiō, 323.

B.

-bā, 188; 333.
Baculus Centuriō, 315; 320.
bonus, 50; 82, *a*.

C.

c; pronunciation of, 5.
Is Caesar an "Imperator"? 463.
Caesar atque Classis Pompēī, 170 (Introduction); 176; 183; 190; 196; 201.
Caesar et Afrānius, 262 (Introduction); 263; 270; 288; 293; 301; 306.
Caesar et Ariovistus, 102, II.
Cardinal numerals, 296; 298.
capiō, 258.
caput, 130.
Cases; names of, 9.
Cause; Ablative of, 137; 431, 2; Relative Clauses of, 423.
centum, 298.
ch; pronunciation of, 5.
Characteristic; Relative clauses of, 424.
Clause; defined, 161, 1; main, 161, 2; subordinate, 161, 4; 274; 412; 450.
collis, 147.
Commands; 447; in indirect discourse, 449; 450.
Common constructions, 431, 2.
Comparatives; how declined, 221; meanings, 219; 223
Comparing; of Adjectives; regular, 219, 220; 230; irregular, 228; 235–237.
of Adverbs; 249.
Complementary Infinitive, 155; position, 155, *b*.
Completed action, 410, *a*.
Compounds; defined, 6, *a*; governing Dative, 400.
Conditional Sentences, 443.
Conjugations; analysis of forms, 332.
Conjugation; First, 73; 82.
Second, 179; 186.
Third, 205; 210; in **iō**, 258.
Fourth, 323.
Periphrastic Active, 453; Passive, 455.
Consonants; classification, 2; double, 2, 3; pronunciation of, 5.
Contraction, 7, 4.
Contrary to fact conditions, 443, III.
cornū; 199.
cum; causal and concessive, 427.
since, although, 427.
when. 384.
Curiō in Āfricā, 361 (Introduction); 362; 365; 395; 432; 435.
cursus, 199.

D.

Dative; with Adjectives, 20, *c*.
of Agent, 456.
with Compounds, 400.
of End or Service, 399.
of Indirect Object, 20; 23.
with some Intransitives, 374.
of the Possessor, 34; 35.
Declension; defined, 19.
Adjectives; First and Second Declensions, 50; 51.
Third Declension, 160; 167.
Nouns:
First Declension; 19; by endings, 19, *c*.
Second; 45; 56; by endings, 45, *c*.
Third; stem, 130; mute stems, 130; 135; liquid stems, 142; i-stems, 147; 153.
Fourth, 199.
Fifth, 266.
Demonstrative Adjectives, 94; 100.
Demonstrative Pronouns, 94; 120; 121.
Dentals, 2.
Deponent Verbs; 367; 368; governing Ablative, 370.
Descriptive Ablative or Genitive, 149.
diēs, 268.
Diphthongs, 4, 2; 7, 3, 4.
Direct Object, 16; 22; 431, 2.
Direct Questions, 437.
Discourse, Indirect; three forms of, 450.
Doer; expressed with Gerundive by Dative, 456.

Double Consonants, 2; 3.
duo, 297.
Duration of Time, 261.
Duty; how expressed, 455.
dux, 130.
Dying for his Men, 461.
Dying Standard Bearer, 460.

E.

-e; Vocative ending of Second Declension, 45, *a*.
ego, 283; 284.
Emphatic words; position of, 162.
End or Service; Dative of, 399.
Ending, 10, 2; 16, *a;* 39, *a*, *b*.
Endings; exhibited, 90; 190; 196; of first declension, 19, *e;* personal, 76; 334; of second declension, 45, *e;* of verbs, 63.
English Method of Pronunciation, 3.
exsul, 142.
Extent of Space, 261.

F.

facilis, 167.
faciō, passive of, 430.
facultās, 130.
Faithful until Death, 465.
Fearing; Subjunctive after Verbs of, 352.
ferō, 430.
Fifth Declension, 266.
Fight Around a Hillock, 214.
fīō, 430.
First Conjugation, 73; 82; 332.
First Periphrastic Conjugation, 453.
Fourth Conjugation; 323; 332; imperfect Indicative, 335.
Fourth Declension, 199.
Future conditions, 443, I, II.
Future participle, 453.
Future tense, 408; tense sign, 333.
Future-perfect tense, 408.

G.

g; pronunciation of, 5.
Gallī et Germānī, 327.
Gender; 10; general rules, 3–5.
Genitive; 169; 130, *a;* 431, 1.
Descriptive, 149.
of i-stems in Third Declension, 147.
of nouns in **-ius** and **-ium**, 57.
Partitive, 299, *b*.
gn; 7, 5.
Gerund; 389; 391; of purpose, 392.
Gerundive; 390; 391; in passive periphrastic conjugation, 455; of purpose, 392.
Grouping words, 169; 431, 1.
gu, 4, 1, *a*.

H.

h, 7, 2.
Hannibal et Scīpiō, 144, II; 151.
hīc, 93; 94; 283, *b*.
Hints for reading Latin, 48; 169; 431.
Hints for writing Latin, 84; 169.
homō, 142.
hostis, 147.
huīc, 4, 1, *a*.
Hyphens; used to group words, 169, *a;* 170; 176; 183; 190; 246; 251; 255.

I.

i, 1.
-ibus, 431, 2.
i-consonant, 1; 5; 7, 5.
i-stems of third declension, 147; 153; 154; 167, *b*; 242.
īdem, 120; 121, *a*.
Imperfect Tense; Indicative; 408; of fourth conjugation, 335; tense sign, 188; 333.
Subjunctive; in contrary to fact conditions, 443, III; with **cum** when, 384; meaning, 274; 276; tense sign, 333; when used, 277; 409; 411.
ille, 93; 94; 283, *b*.
Imperative in commands, 447; 449.
Impersonal construction; defined, 457; with passive periphrastic conjugation, 457.

in; with ablative, 31; with accusative, 38.
Incident at the Battle of Pharsalia, 466.
Incompleted action, 275.
Indeclinable nouns, 10, 5.
Indefinite pronouns, 124.
Indicative mood; with **cum** *when*, 384.
Future tense signs, 333.
Imperfect tense; of fourth conjugation; 335; tense sign, 333.
Indirect Discourse; three forms of, 450.
Indirect Object, 20; 23.
Indirect Statements; 337, II–341; 344–346; 450.
Defined, 337, II, *a*; 338.
Full rule for, 413.
Tenses of Infinitive, 344–346.
Subordinate Clauses of, 412.
Indirect Questions, 437; 438.
Infinitive Mood; 75, *a*; 83; 169; 279, *a*; 431, 1; 446, *d*.
Complementary; 155; position, 155, *b*.
Future tense of deponents, 368, 1.
Subject Accusative, 340.
Tenses of; in indirect statements, 344–346.
Use, 336–341; 344–346; 413.
Interrogative; adjectives, 114; pronouns, 113; 114.
Instrument or means; Ablative of, 68; 69.
Intransitive verbs; with dative, 375; 400; defined, 374; 400, *a*.
-iō; Verbs in, 258.
ipse, 120; 121, *c*.
Irregular adjectives, 125.
is, 100–102; 283, *b*.
-is, 431, 2.
iste, 120; 121, *a*, *b*.

L.

Labials, 2, 1.
Labienus meets his match, 464.
labor, 142.
Less vivid future conditions, 443, II.
levis, 167.
Licinius atque Claudius, 132.
Liquids, 2, 2.
Liquid stems of third declension, 142.
List of Rules for ready reference, following the Vocabularies, 285.
Lists of Words for Review, 129; 203; 291; 433.
litus, 142.
Locative case, 9, *a*.

M.

-m, 431, 2.
Main clause, 161, 2, *b*.
Main verb; 161, 3; 275; 277; in indirect statements, 413.
mālō, 379.
Manner; Ablative of, 89.
mare, 147.
Means; Ablative of, 68; 69; 77, *a*; 431, 2.
Mental action; Verbs denoting, 338.
mīles, 135.
Miles et Tribūnus, 144.
mīlle, 297, 298.
moneō, 179; 186.
mōns, 153.
mūrus, 45.
Mutes, 2, 1; 7, 6.
Mute stems of third declension, 130; 135.

N.

nd, 7, 2.
nē; in Negative Commands and Appeals, 447.
denoting Negative Purpose, 278, *b*; 279.
after Verbs of Fearing, 353.
-ne, 8, 4; 41.
Negative Commands and Appeals, 447.
Negative Purpose, 278, *b*; 279.
Negative Result, 308, *b*, 309.
nf, 7, 5.
Neuter nominative and accusative, 130, *c*; 142, *a*.

Neuter nouns of second declension. 44.
nōlō, 379; 446, *d*.
Nominative, 21; 431, 2.
nōs, 283.
Nouns; indeclinable, 10, 5; predicate, 29; 30.
nox, 153.
Numerals, 296–299; 304.

O.

Obligation; how expressed, 455.
Object; direct, 16; 22; 431, 2; indirect, 20; 23.
Omission of subject, 39.
oppidum, 45.
opus, 142.
Order of words, 26; 162.
-ōs, 431, 2.

P.

Palatals, 2.
Participles; 82, *a*; 357.
How declined, 358.
of Deponents, 368, 2.
Future active, 453.
Perfect passive, 359, *b*.
Present active, 359, *a*.
How used, 359.
Partitive Genitive, 299, *b*.
Parts; Principal, of verbs, 83; 212; 330.
Passive Periphrastic Conjugation, 455.
Passive Voice defined, 73, *b*.
pater, 142.
Penult, 6, 3; 8, 3.
Perfect Tense; Indicative, 408.
Participle, 359, *b*; 403, *g*.
Subjunctive; meaning, 410; use, 411.
Personal endings, 76; 334.
Personal pronouns, 283.
pēs, 135.
ph; how pronounced, 5.
Pīsō Aquilānus, 208.
Place whither, 360.
Pluperfect Tense; Indicative, 408.
Subjunctive; with **cum**, *when*, 384; meaning, 410; use, 411.
Plural; of adjectives, 13, *a*; of first declension, 12; of verbs, 16, *b*.
plūs, 229.
Possessive Adjectives, 285.
Possessor; Dative of the, 34; 35.
possum, 313; 400, *b*.
prae-ficiō, 400, *c*.
prae-mittō, 400, *d*.
Predicate; adjectives, 52; nouns, 29; 30.
Preposition; position of, 169; 431, 1.
Present Tense; Indicative, 408.
Participle, 359, *a*.
Subjunctive; meaning, 274, 2; 276; tense sign, 333; when used, 277; 409; 411; in less vivid future conditions, 443, II.
Primary tenses, 408.
prīnceps, 130.
Principal Clause, 161.
Principal Parts of Verbs, 83; 212; 330.
Proelium cum Helvētiīs, 157; 164.
Proelium Mundae, 326.
Pronouns; 100.
Demonstrative, 94; 120; 121.
Indefinite, 124.
Interrogative, 113; 114.
Personal and reflexive, 283.
Relative; 106; 107; agreement of, 108; 109.
Pronunciation; English, 3; Roman, 3; 4; 5.
puer, 56.
Puer et Amīcus, 118.
Pūgna Pharsalica, 245 (Introduction); 246; 251; 255; 467.
Pullō et Vorēnus, 217.
Purpose; defined, 278, *a*; gerundive or gerund with **ad**, 392; relative clauses of, 422; subjunctive of, 279; 337, *b*.

Q.

qu, 4, 1, *a*.
quam, than; 222; with superlatives, 439.
-que, 8, 4; 91.

Questions; direct, 437; indirect, 437; 438; 450.
qui, 106–109; 286; 422.
quidam, 124.
quis, 113; 114.
quod, 114, *b*.
-quod, 124, *b*.

R.

-re, 333.
Reading; Hints for, 84; 169; 431.
Ready reference; Rules arranged for, Following the Vocabularies.
regō, 205; 210.
Reflexive Pronouns, 283.
Relative clauses; 425; of cause, 423. of characteristic, 424. of purpose and result, 422.
Relative Pronouns; 106; 107; 161, 4; agreement of, 108; 109.
Result; Subjunctive of, 309; relative clause of, 422.
Review; Word-lists for, 129; 203; 291; 433.
Rōmānī atque Gallī, 90.
Rules of Syntax arranged for ready reference, Following the Vocabularies.

S.

sapiēns, 167.
Saving the Standard, 225.
Second declension, 45: 56.
Second conjugation, 179; 186; 332.
Second periphrastic conjugation, 455.
Secondary tenses, 408.
Sequence of tenses, 411.
Separation; Ablative of, 418.
Service or end; Dative of, 399.
Silva, 19.
Simple conditions; nothing implied, 443. I.
Space; extent of, 261.
Specification; Ablative of, 194.
Statements; direct, 337, II. indirect, 337, II–341; 344–346; 413; 450.
Stem; defined, 19, *d*, *e*; of third declension, 130.
Stems of verbs, 83; 330.
Stem vowel; of first declension, 19, *d*; of second declension, 43.
Subject; 21; 26, *a*; 35; omitted, 39.
Syntax; Rules of, arranged for ready reference, Following the Vocabularies.
Subjunctive Mood; 274.
in Conditional Sentences, 443, II, III.
in Commands and Appeals, 447; 449.
with **cum** Causal or Concessive, 427.
with **cum** Temporal, 384.
in Indirect Discourse, 450; Indirect commands, 449; Indirect Questions, 438; Indirect statements, 413.
of Purpose, 279.
in Relative Clauses; 425; of cause, 423; of characteristic, 424; of purpose and result, 422.
of Result, 309.
after Verbs of Fearing, 353.
rule for Use of Tenses, 277; 409; 411.
Tenses of; present tense; meaning, 274, 2; 276; tense sign, 333; use, 277, 443, II.
imperfect tense; meaning; 274; 276; tense sign, 333; use, 277; 443, III.
perfect and pluperfect tenses; meaning, 410, *c*; use, 411.
Subordinate clauses; defined, 161; in indirect statements, 413; 450.
Superlatives; how declined, 221, *b*. meanings, 219; 223; with **quam**, 439.
suī, 283.
sum; 61; 67; 453; 454; position, 26, *b*.
suus, 191.

T.

Tenses; primary and secondary, 408; sequence of, 411.

Tense signs, 188; 333.
-ter, 247.
"that" omitted in indirect statements, 337, II, *c.*
Third conjugation; 205; 210; 332; in **iō**, 258; 332.
Third declension; mute stems, 130; 135.
Liquid stems, 142.
i-stems, 147; 153.
Adjectives, 160; 167.
Three forms of indirect discourse, 450.
Time denoted by infinitive in indirect statements, 344; 345.
Time; ablative of, 174; accusative of, 261.
Towns; names of as place whither, 360.
trēs, 297.
tū, 83; 284.

U.

ultima, 6, 3.
Uniting or grouping words, 169; 431, I.
-um, 44.
ūnus, 297.
urbs, 153.
ut; of purpose, 278, *b;* 279; of result, 308, *b;* 309; with verbs of fearing, 353.
ūtor, 370.

V.

v; pronunciation, 5.
vēlōx, 167.
Verb; main, 161, 3; position of, 26, *b;* 162; stems, 75, *a;* 83; 330.
Verbs; agreement of, 63; of mental action, 338; personal endings, 76; 334; plural of, 16, *b;* voice, 73, *a*, *b*.
vir, 56.
virtūs, 135.
Vivid, see Less vivid.
Vocative case, 45, *a*, *b*.
Voice; defined, 73, *a*, *b*.
volō, 379.
vōs, 283.
Vowels, 4, 1; 7.

W.

Words; Lists of Allied Words explained, 131.
Word-lists for review, 129; 203; 291; 433.
Word-order, 26; 162; 431, I.
Writing Latin; Hints for, 48.

THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE STAMPED BELOW

AN INITIAL FINE OF 25 CENTS
WILL BE ASSESSED FOR FAILURE TO RETURN THIS BOOK ON THE DATE DUE. THE PENALTY WILL INCREASE TO 50 CENTS ON THE FOURTH DAY AND TO $1.00 ON THE SEVENTH DAY OVERDUE.

JUL 16 1940
JUL 26 1943
NOV 8 1947
11 Feb'55 S5
MAY 14 1953 LU
5Sep'57KL
REC'D LD
DEC 21 1957

LD 21-100m-7,'39

YB 00201

361233

760
S541
W

2nd

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY